942.03
Fro/Chr
37377

00037377

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY-400 023.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 02 January, 2016

1027 F

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSALATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

BY THOMAS JOHNES.

37377 ac

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He moste rehearse, as neighe as ever he can,
Everich worde, if it be in his charge,
All speke he never so rudely and so large;
Or elles he moste tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE THIRD EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. IV.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1808.

xeb · 942 · 03

942.03
· Fro/Chr
37377

Brooke Printer, Paternoster-Row.

THE

CONTENTS

OF

THE FOURTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. The duke of Burgundy marches from the City of Rouen, with the Intention of combating the Duke of Lancaster and the English.—The two Armies are encamped opposite to each other at Tourneheim - - Page 1

II. Sir John Chandos does great Mischief to the Province of Anjou.—He despoils the Estates of the viscount de Roche-Chouart, except the Fortresses and strong Holds - - - 6

III. The lord Louis de Sancerre surprises the earl of Pembroke.—Several of his men are slain, and the Earl is besieged in a House at Puirenon - 9

IV. Sir John Chandos comes to the Assistance of the Earl of Pembroke, besieged in Puirenon - - 16

V. The Death of Queen Philippa of England: She makes three Requests to the King on her Death-bed.—Some Frenchmen, having attacked the English Camp at Tournehem, are repulsed by Sir Robert de Namur - 20

CHAP. VI. The duke of Burgundy and his Army decamp without a Battle.—The Duke of Lancaster returns to Calais - 25

VII. The Earl of Pembroke, desirous of avenging himself for the Defeat he received at Puirenon, makes an Incursion to Anjou.—The Abbey of St. Salvin in Poitou is betrayed to the French, and forfeited - - 29

VIII. The County of St. Pol in Picardy is pillaged and ruined by the English.—Sir Hugh de Chastillon is taken Prisoner - - - - 32

IX. Sir John Chandos is slain in a Skirmish.—The French, at first victorious, are in the end defeated - - 38

X. The Lord de Coucy and the Lord de Pommiers are unwilling to take Part with either Side in this War.—The Lords de Maleval and de Marneil turn to the French - - - 52

XI. The Form of the Letter which the English King sent into Aquitaine.—Chatelheraut is taken by the French, and Belleperche is besieged - - 54

XII. The Earls of Cambridge and Pembroke carry off the Mother of the Duke of Bourbon with the Garrison of Belleperche.—The Duke of Bourbon takes Possession of that Castle - - 62

XIII. The Four Brothers of France have a Meeting.—Their Preparations for the War.—The Mother of the duke of Bourbon obtains her Liberty.—A Treaty entered into between the Kings of France and Navarre - 67

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin leaves Spain and arrives at Toulouse, where the Duke of Anjou receives him with great Joy.—They take together several Castles from the English - 72

XV. The Duke of Berry invades Limousin - - - - 76

XVI. A Truce is established between England and Scotland.—Sir Robert Knolles over-runs, burns and ravages the whole Countries of Picardy and the Vermandois - 80

XVII. The Garrison of Noyon make the English Prisoners who had set fire to Pont L'Eveque.—The King of France sends for Sir Bertrand du Guesclin - - - 88

XVIII. The Prince of Wales assembles his Army at Cognac, where he meets his Brother the Duke of Lancaster.—The Dukes of Anjou and Berry break up their Expedition, Limoges having turned to the French - - - 90

XIX. The Prince of Wales, anxious to recover Limoges, lays siege to it, and undermines it - - 94

XX. Sir Robert Knolles, in continuing his Incursions through different Provinces of France, advances near to Paris.—A Knight of his Army, in returning from a vainglorious Expedition, is slain by a Butcher of Paris - - - 97

CHAP. XXI. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin takes the Fortress of St. Yrier in Limousin.—The Prince of Wales re-conquers Limoges - - 101

XXII. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin is made Constable of France - - 106

XXIII. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin and the Lord de Clisson defeat the Forces of Sir Robert Knolles at Pont-Valin - - - 110

XXIV. Sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt is made Prisoner and ransomed.—Sir Raymond de Marneil, a Partisan of France, is taken, and in imminent Danger, but saved by his Keeper - 116

XXV. The Prince of Wales, having lost by Death his eldest Son, gives up the Duchy of Aquitaine to the Care of the Duke of Lancaster.—Four Knights of Brittany take the Castle of Mont-Paon - - 118

XXVI. The Four Knights defend themselves against the Duke of Lancaster.—The Duke, on taking the Place, admits them to ransom - - 124

XXVII. The duke of Lancaster disbands his Army, and returns to Bourdeaux.—The lord de Pons turns to the French Party - - 129

XXVIII. The English take the Castle of Montcontour - - 131

XXIX. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, Constable of France, besieges the Town of Uses, which surrenders to him upon Capitulation - - 134

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX. The King of England's Anger against Sir Robert Knolles is appeased.—Peace is made between the English and Flemings - 138

XXXI. The King of Majorca is ransomed from King Henry of Spain.—He makes War on the King of Arragon - - - 143

XXXII. The Duke of Lancaster espouses the eldest Daughter of the late Don Pedro, King of Spain.—Treaties of Alliance are entered into between the Kings of France and Spain - - 145

XXXIII. The Duke of Lancaster appoints Governors in Guienne: He returns to England, and carries his Lady with him.—Sir Walter Manny dies in London - - 149

XXXIV. The King of England appoints the Earl of Pembroke Governor of Aquitaine.—The Spaniards, being Allies of France, attack him at Sea, off La Rochelle - - 151

XXXV. The Inhabitants of La Rochelle refuse to assist the Earl of Pembroke.—The Sénéschal and the Lord de Tannaybouton, with others, come to his Aid - - 157

XXXVI. The Earl of Pembroke is defeated, and made Prisoner by the Spaniards.—They sail from La Rochelle with their Prisoners.—The Captal de Buch arrives there, but too late - - - 159

CHAP. XXXVII. Evan of Wales defeats the English off the Island of Guernsey.—The King of France sends him to Spain to seek for Men at Arms, to lay siege to La Rochelle - - 164

XXXVIII. The King of England is much cast down at the Capture of the Earl of Pembroke.—Evan of Wales meets the Earl a Prisoner in Spain - 168

XXXIX. The Constable du Guesclin takes the Castle of Monmorillon, and other Places in Poitou - 171

XL. The Constable of France takes Moncontour by a Capitulation. He marches from thence to form a Junction with the Duke of Berry in the Limousin, when they lay Siege to St. Severe - - 174

XLI. The Garrison of St. Severe, after a sharp Assault, surrenders to Sir Bertrand du Guesclin.—The City of Poitiers turns to the French Party - - 180

XLII. The French make the Captal de Buch Prisoner.—La Rochelle turns to the French - 185

XLIII. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin takes several Castles in the Rochellois.—The King of England embarks to come to the Assistance of Thouars, but is prevented by contrary Winds: Upon which those of Thouars, and many others in Poitou, surrender to the French - 196

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV. The Duke of Brittany dares not openly declare for the King of England.—Sir Bertrand du Guesclin lays Siege to Civray.—The English are defeated, and the whole of the Countries of Poitou, Saintonge, and La Rochelle, are given up to the French - 207

XLV. The Siege of Becherel.—Peace between the Kings of France and Navarre.—The Death of the King of Scotland - - 217

XLVI. The Earl of Salisbury, Sir William Neville, Sir Philip Courtenay, with many other Men at Arms, land in Brittany.—The Constable of France marches thither; on which the Duke of Brittany goes to England - - 219

XLVII. The French besiege four different Places.—La Roche Sur Yon surrenders to the French.—The Siege of Brest is raised by a Capitulation, which is not kept - - 226

XLVIII. The Duke of Lancaster lands at Calais, and invades Picardy.—A Part of his Army defeated by the Lord de Boursiers before Ribemont.—Another Part of his Army is defeated near Soissons by an Ambuscade of Burgundians and French - - - 235

XLIX. The Hostages sent from Derval are beheaded.—Sir Robert Knolles retaliates on those Prisoners whom he had taken.—The Duke of Lancaster finishes his Expedition - 245

CHAP.

CHAP. L. The Duke of Anjou's Campaign into Upper Gascony - - 249

LI. The Earl of Pembroke and his Companions are ransomed.—A short Truce between the French and English.—Becherel surrenders on Terms.—The Death of the Earl of Pembroke - 253

LII. Several Towns in Gascony surrender to the King of France.—Sir Hugh de Chastillon returns from Prison.—The Castle of Becherel surrenders to the French - - - 256

LIII. A Truce agreed on at Bruges between the Kings of France and England.—The Duke of Brittany retires to his own Country, and regains some of his Towns and Castles - - 265

LIV. Some Breton Lords of the French Party are near being taken by the Duke of Brittany, but are delivered by the Truces at Bruges - - - 269

LV. St. Sauveur Le Vicomte surrenders to the French.—The Lord de Coucy leads a large Army into Austria, which he claims as his Inheritance - - 272

LVI. The Truce between France and England is prolonged.—The Death of the Black Prince.—The Lord de Coucy returns, having had indifferent Success 276

LVII. Richard, Son to the Prince of Wales, is acknowledged as presumptive Heir to the Crown of England.—The Negotiations for Peace having failed, and the Truces expired, the War is renewed between the French and English - - - 279

CHAP. LVIII. Pope Gregory XI. leaves Avignon, and returns to Rome.—On the Death of Edward III. Richard, Son of the late Prince of Wales, is crowned King of England - 281

LIX. The King of France equips for Sea a large Fleet, which burns several Towns in England - - 284

LX. The town of Ardres surrenders to the French.—The Death of the Captal de Buch and of the Queen of France - - 287

LXI. The War recommences between the King of France and the King of Navarre.—The Siege of Cherbourg.—The Duke of Lancaster invades Brittany.—The Castle of Auray surrenders to the French - 290

LXII. The French Garrison of Montbourg is defeated by the English at Cherbourg - - 297

LXIII. The Duke of Anjou undertakes an Expedition against the English in the Bourdelois - - 302

LXIV. Sir Thomas Felton is defeated and made Prisoner, with many of the principal Lords of Gascony, by a Party of French at the Siege of Bergerac - - - 309

LXV. Bergerac surrenders to the Duke of Anjou.—The Lords de Duras and de Rosem, after having promised to be of the French Interest, return again to the English - 315

CHAP. LXVI. Castillon, Sauveterre and several other Places in Gascony surrender to the Duke of Anjou - 321

LXVII. The Duke of Anjou takes the Town and Castle of St. Macaire by Capitulation.—The Town of Duras by Storm, but the Castle receives Quarter - - 324

LXVIII. The Duke of Anjou returns to the Duchess at Toulouse, and the Constable to the King of France.—Evan of Wales lays Siege to Mortain Sur Mer - 330

LXIX. King Charles of France instigates the Scots to make War on England.—The Scots take the Castle of Berwick - - 334

LXX. The earl of Northumberland retakes the Castle of Berwick - 340

LXXI. The Earls of Northumberland and Nottingham enter Scotland with a large Army - - 345

LXXII. Sir Thomas Musgrave and the English under his Command are defeated by the Scots - - 350

LXXIII. The Deaths of the Queens of France and of Navarre, and the Renewal of the Feuds between their two Husbands - - 355

LXXIV. The Death of Pope Gregory XI.—After the sudden Death of his immediate Successor, the Cardinals are constrained to elect Urban VI. which causes a Schism in the Church of Rome - 357

CHAP. LXXV. The King of Navarre sends Ambassadors to France, in Hopes of regaining Possession of his Children.—Two of his People are convicted of having attempted to poison the King of France - 364

LXXVI. The King of France orders the Possessions of the King of Navarre to be seized, as well in Normandy as in Languedoc.—The King of Navarre forms an Alliance with the English.—The Terms of that Alliance - 368

LXXVII. The Lords de Coucy and de la Riviere take several Places in the county of Evreux, from the King of Navarre - - 374

LXXVIII. The Duke of Anjou retains large Bodies of Men at Arms against the English.—The Spaniards lay Siege to Bayonne - - - 380

THE

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY MARCHES FROM THE CITY OF ROUEN, WITH THE INTENTION OF COMBATING THE DUKE OF LANCASTER AND THE ENGLISH.—THE TWO ARMIES ARE ENCAMPED OPPOSITE TO EACH OTHER AT TOURNEHEM *.

WHEN the duke of Lancaſter was arrived at Calais, as has been before mentioned, and had refreſhed his army a little, he was not willing to remain there without performing ſome warlike deeds upon the French: he therefore marched out with his two marſhals and full three hundred lances, with as many archers. They paſſed through Guines †, and continued their march until they had croſſed the river Doſtre, and overran that whole country. They turned towards the abbey

* Tournehem,—a ſmall town of Artois, bailiwick of St. Omer.

† Guines,—a town in Picardy, two leagues and a half from Calais.

of Liques *, where they collected a large booty, which they brought safe with them to Calais.

On another day, he made an excursion towards Boulogne, where he did much damage to the flat countries.

The count Guy de St. Pol and sir Galeran his son were at the time in the city of Terouenne, with many men at arms; but they made no sally against the English, when they were on these expeditions, for they did not think themselves sufficiently strong to oppose them in the field.

News was brought to the king of France, who at that time was holding his court at Rouen in the greatest pomp and magnificence, that the duke of Lancaster was come to Calais, and that from thence he was daily making inroads into France. When the king and his council heard this, their minds were occupied on a different subject; for this same week the duke of Burgundy was to embark with his whole army, consisting of upwards of three thousand fighting men, to invade England.

The king demanded from his prelates and council what was best to be done, supposing the English had crossed the sea, whether to advance to them and offer battle, or to continue their plan of operation for the invasion of England. This last proposition was given up, and orders sent to the French army to break up their quarters in and near Rouen as soon as possible, and to prepare every thing for marching towards Calais with the duke

* Abbey of Liques,—diocese of Boulogne sur mer.

of

of Burgundy. Such were the commands of the king of France, for he was deſirous of combating the Engliſh on that ſide of the water.

The men at arms heard theſe orders with great joy, and were ſoon ready. The duke of Burgundy, with his whole army, took the field, and formed his march ſo as to croſs the river Somme at Abbeville. He continued until he came to Montrieul* ſur mer, and from thence to Heſdin† and St. Paul‡, where they halted for the rear of the army to join them.

News was brought to the duke of Lancaſter, that the French were on their march to offer him battle; upon which the duke, with his whole army, left Calais, and took up their quarters in the valley of Tournehem. He had not been long there before that gallant knight ſir Robert de Namur came in grand array to ſerve under him, with a hundred lances of good men at arms, accompanied with knights and ſquires.

The duke of Lancaſter was much rejoiced on his arrival, and ſaid: 'My good uncle, you are heartily welcome; for they ſay that the duke of Burgundy is on his march, and wiſhes to fight with us.' Sir Robert replied, 'My lord, by God's help, we will willingly meet him.'

---

* Montrieul,—a town in Picardy, ſeventeen leagues and a half from Calais.

† Heſdin,—a ſtrong town in Artois, eighteen leagues and a half from Calais.

‡ St. Paul,—a ſmall town in Picardy, dioceſe of Beauvais.

The Engliſh found good quarters in the valley of Tournehem, where they fortified themſelves with ſtrong hedges, and there came daily to them proviſion in abundance from Calais. Their light horſe ſcoured the country of Guines, but they gained little; for all the low countries had been ſpoiled, and their moſt valuable things carried for ſafety to the adjoining fortreſſes.

The duke of Burgundy arrived with all his chivalry, and fixed his quarters at the hill of Tournehem, where his marſhals immediately encamped the men at arms oppoſite to where the Engliſh lay.

The French lodged themſelves orderly, and without delay: they took up much ground, and with good reaſon; for I have had it mentioned to me as a certain fact, that the duke of Burgundy had under his command four thouſand good knights. You may judge therefore of the great difference between the two armies.

Each army remained in theſe poſitions a conſiderable time without doing any thing; for the duke of Burgundy, notwithſtanding he was ſo much ſuperior in force, and had with him, of good men at arms, ſeven to one, would not engage without the poſitive orders of the king of France, his brother, who was not deſirous of it. In truth, had the French come forward to battle, the Engliſh would not have refuſed it; for they were daily drawn out, and in readineſs to receive them. They had made every preparation, and each perſon knew what he was to do, ſhould the enemy ſhew

any

any inclination to fight: but becauſe they were ſo ſmall a body, and ſo well fortified, they would not fooliſhly loſe an advantage by quitting their camp.

Some knights advanced from each army to ſkirmiſh; and, as uſual in ſuch caſes, ſometimes one ſide gained, and ſometimes the other.

The earl of Flanders, at this time, was very anxious for the honour and reputation of the duke of Burgundy, his ſon-in-law: he reſided in a handſome houſe which he had lately built near to Ghent: he frequently heard from or ſent to the duke, by meſſengers who were conſtantly employed on this ſervice. The earl ſtrongly adviſed his ſon-in-law, for his own honour, not to exceed, on any account, the orders which he had received from his brother the king of France, or from his council.

We will now return to the affairs of the diſtant provinces, where the knights had frequently more employment, and met with adventures in greater abundance than any where elſe, on account of the war being carried on more vigorouſly.

CHAP. II.

SIR JOHN CHANDOS DOES GREAT MISCHIEF TO THE PROVINCE OF ANJOU.—HE DESPOILS THE ESTATES OF THE VISCOUNT DE ROCHE-CHOUART, EXCEPT THE FORTRESSES AND STRONG HOLDS.

DURING the time of this expedition to Tournehem, and in that neighbourhood, ſome feats of arms were performed in Poitou, which ought not to be forgotten. Sir John Chandos, being ſénéſchal of Poitou, and a hardy and valiant knight, had a great deſire to meet the French: he therefore did not remain long idle, but collected, during the time he paſſed at Poitiers, a body of men at arms, Engliſh and Poitevins, and ſaid he would make an incurſion with them towards Anjou, and return by Touraine, to look at the French who were aſſembled in thoſe parts. He ſent information of the expedition he meditated to the earl of Pembroke, who was in garriſon at Montagne * ſur mer, with two hundred lances.

The earl was much pleaſed with this intelligence, and would willingly have been of the party; but his attendants and ſome knights of his council prevented him. by ſaying; 'My lord, you are a young and noble knight, formed to excel: if you

* Montagne,—a town in Saintonge, on the Garonne.

at

at this moment unite yourſelf with ſir John Chandos and his army, he will obtain all the glory of the expedition, and you will be only named as his companion. It is therefore more proper for you, who are of ſuch high rank and birth, to act for yourſelf, and let ſir John Chandos do ſo on his part, who is but a knight-bachelor when compared with you.'

Theſe and ſuch like words cooled the ardour of the earl of Pembroke, who, having no longer any wiſh to go, ſent an excuſe to ſir John Chandos.

Sir John would not, however, give up his enterpriſe, but ordered his rendezvous at Poitiers; from whence he marched, with three hundred lances, knights, and ſquires, and two hundred archers. In this number were, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Stephen Coſſington, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt, ſir Richard Taunton, lord Thomas Spencer, ſir Nêle Loring, the earl of Angus*, ſir Thomas Banaſtre, ſir John Trivet, ſir William de Montendre, ſir Maubrins de Linieres, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, and ſeveral other knights and ſquires.

Theſe men at arms and archers marched boldly forth and in good array, as if going upon ſome

* David king of Scotland created ſir John Stuart of Bonkill earl of Angus. He and his heirs held the eſtates, but the Umphravilles of England (the earl mentioned in the text) graſped at the title for many generations.—*Pinkerton's Hiſt. of Scotland*, vol. i. p. 7.

grand enterpriſe, and, having paſſed through the province of Poitou, entered that of Anjou. When they were arrived in that country, they fixed their quarters in the flat parts of it, and ſent out their light diviſions to burn and deſtroy every thing. They did infinite miſchief to this rich and fine country, without any one attempting to prevent them; and they remained there upwards of fifteen days, eſpecially in that part of it called the Loudunois.

They retreated from Anjou down the river Creuſe, which ſeparates Touraine from Poitou; and ſir John Chandos, with his army, entered the lands of the viſcount de la Rochechouart, where every thing, excepting the fortreſſes, was ruined. They advanced to the town of Rochechouart, and vigorouſly aſſaulted it, but without effect; for there were excellent men at arms within it, commanded by Thibault du Pont and Helyons de Talay, who prevented it from being taken or injured.

The Engliſh continued their march to Chauvigny*, where ſir John Chandos received information that the lord Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, with a great body of men at arms, were at la Haye† in Touraine. He was very deſirous to march that way, and ſent in great haſte to the earl of Pembroke to ſignify his intentions, and to beg of him to accompany him to la Haye in Tou-

* Chauvigny, a town in Poitou, on the Vienne, ſix leagues from Poitiers.

† La Haye, a town in Touraine, on the Creuſe.

raine,

raine, and that he would meet him at Châtelheraut*. Chandos the herald was the bearer of this meſſage. He found the earl of Pembroke at Mortagne buſily employed in muſtering his men, and preparing, as it appeared, to make an excurſion. He excuſed himſelf a ſecond time, by the advice of his council, ſaying he could not accompany him.

The herald, on his return, found his maſter and the army at Châtelheraut, to whom he delivered his anſwer. When ſir John Chandos heard it, he was very melancholy, knowing that pride and preſumption had made the earl refuſe to be a party in this expedition, and only replied, 'God's will be done.' He diſmiſſed the greater part of his army, who ſeparated, and he, with his attendants, returned to Poitiers.

CHAP. III.

THE LORD LOUIS DE SANCERRE SURPRISES THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.—SEVERAL OF HIS MEN ARE SLAIN, AND THE EARL IS BESIEGED IN A HOUSE AT PUIRENON.

WE will now relate how the earl of Pembroke proſpered. As ſoon as he knew that ſir John Chandos had diſbanded his army, and was

* Châtelheraut,—a town in Poitou, on the Vienne.

returned

returned to Poitiers, he aſſembled his own forces, which conſiſted of three hundred Engliſh and Poitevins, and marched from Mortagne. He was joined by ſome knights and ſquires of Poitou and Saintonge, as well as by ſome Engliſh knights that had been in ſir John Chandos' army.

Theſe men at arms, therefore, advanced under the command of the earl of Pembroke, and took the direct road to where ſir John Chandos had been, burning aud deſpoiling all thoſe parts of Anjou which the firſt had left, or which had been ranſomed. They halted to refreſh themſelves in the Loudunois, and then took the road for the lands of the viſcount de Rochechouart, to which they did great damage.

The French who were in garriſon on the frontiers of Touraine, Anjou and Poitou, conſiſting of a large body of men at arms, heard the whole truth of theſe two excurſions, and how the earl of Pembroke, who was a young man, would not, through pride, ſerve under ſir John Chandos. They therefore reſolved to conquer him, if they could; for they thought they ſhould more eaſily defeat him than ſir John Chandos.

They made, in conſequence, a ſecret levy of their forces from all the garriſons; and ſir Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, took the command of them. They marched all night to la Roche-poſay * in Poitou, which was in the French intereſt. There were in this expedition, ſir

* La Roche-poſay,—a town in Touraine, on the Creuſe.

Robert

Robert de Sancerre, couſin to the marſhal, ſir John de Vienne, ſir John de Bueil, ſir William des Bourdes, ſir Louis de St. Julien and Carnet le Breton; in the whole, ſeven hundred fighting men.

The earl of Pembroke had finiſhed his excurſion, and re-entered Poitou, having completed the total deſtruction of the viſcount de Rochechouart's eſtate. In his company were, ſir Baldwin de Franville, ſénéſchal of Saintonge, lord Thomas Percy, lord Thomas Spencer, the earl of Angus, ſir John Orwich *, ſir John Harpedon, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir John Couſins, ſir Thomas de St. Alban, ſir Robert Twiford, ſir Simon Auſagre, ſir John de Mortain, ſir John Touchet, aud ſeveral others.

The Engliſh and Poitevins marched on without any thought or precaution, having heard nothing of theſe men at arms: they had entered Poitou with all their pillage, and came, one day about noon, to a village called Puirenon, where they halted, after the manner of perſons in perfect ſecurity. But when the ſervants were about to put the horſes in the ſtable, and to prepare the ſupper, the French, who well knew what they were about, entered the village of Puirenon, with their lances in their reſts, bawling out their cry, 'Our Lady, for Sancerre the marſhal!' and then overthrew all they met in the ſtreets. The noiſe became ſo

* Sir John Orwich. Q. Barnes calls him ſir Nêle Loring. Why not Norwich?

violent

violent, that the Engliſh ran to the head-quarters with great alarm, to inform the earl of Pembroke, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Baldwin de Franville and the others, that the French had ſuddenly attacked and ſurpriſed them. Theſe lords were ſoon armed, and, ſallying out from their hotels, collected their men together; but they could not all aſſemble, for the numbers of the French were ſo conſiderable that the Engliſh and Poitevins were overpowered; and, in this firſt attack, more than one hundred and twenty were killed or made priſoners. The earl of Pembroke and ſome knights had no other remedy but to retire, as quickly as they could, into an unembattled houſe, which belonged to the knights-templars, without a moat, and only encloſed with a ſtone-wall. All who could get there time enough ſhut themſelves in: the greater part of the others were ſlain or made priſoners, and their arms and horſes taken. The earl of Pembroke loſt all his plate.

The French, who cloſely purſued them, finding thoſe who could get together had ſhut themſelves up in this houſe, were much rejoiced, ſaying among themſelves; 'They muſt be our priſoners, for they cannot eſcape; and we will make them dearly repay the damages they have done in Anjou and Touraine.' On which, they advanced to this houſe in regular order, and with a good will to aſſault it: when they were come thither, it was evening: after they had examined it narrowly on all ſides, to ſee if it might be eaſily taken, they began the attack, in which were performed many gallant

gallant deeds of arms, for the French were in great numbers, and were all well tried men.

They made different attempts on this houſe, which was very ſtrong, and gave the earl of Pembroke and his men enough to do; for the Engliſh, being ſo few, laboured hard to defend themſelves, as it was to them of the greateſt conſequence. Scaling ladders were brought, and fixed againſt the walls, which ſome bold adventurers mounted, with their ſhields over their heads to ſhelter themſelves from ſtones and arrows; but when they were got to the top they had done nothing, for they found there, ready to receive them, knights, ſquires, men at arms, with lances and ſwords, with which they handſomely fought hand to hand, and made them deſcend much quicker than they had mounted. Add to this, that there were Engliſh archers intermixed with theſe men at arms, at two feet diſtance on the walls, who ſhot ſo well that the French beneath ſuffered much.

The Engliſh continued under conſtant alarm, repelling theſe attacks until night, when the French, tired with fighting and fatigue, ſounded their trumpets for the retreat, ſaying they had done enough for one day, but that they would return to the attack on the morrow; adding, that, as they could not eſcape from them, they would ſtarve them to ſurrender. They returned to their quarters in high ſpirits, and made merry, having placed a ſtrong guard in front of the houſe to be more ſecure of their enimies.

It will readily be believed that the earl of Pembroke and thoſe who were thus blockaded were not much at their eaſe: they were aware that this houſe was not of ſufficient ſtrength to hold out long againſt ſo many men at arms. It was as badly provided with artillery, to their great ſorrow, as with proviſion; but this laſt was not of much conſequence, for they could well faſt a day and night, if neceſſary, in defending themſelves.

When it was dark, they entreated a ſquire, an expert ſoldier, and in whom they placed great confidence, to ſet out directly by a poſtern, and ride as faſt as he could to Poitiers, to inform ſir John Chandos and his friends how awkwardly they were ſituated, and to beg they would come to their aſſiſtance; in the hopes of which they would hold out until noon; and, if he made haſte, he might eaſily make this journey by early morning.

The ſquire, who perceived the extreme danger in which all the lords were, very cheerfully undertook it, but boaſted a little too much of his knowledge of the roads. He ſet out about midnight by a poſtern-gate, and took the ſtraight road, as he thought for Poitiers; but it ſo fell out, that during the whole night he wandered about, until it was broad day, before he hit upon the right road.

At day-break, the French, who were beſieging the Engliſh at Puirenon as you have before heard, ſounded their trumpets to arm, ſaying it would be better to make their attacks in the cool of the morning than in the heat of the day.

The

The earl of Pembroke and the knights ſhut up with him, inſtead of ſleeping, had fortified themſelves with whatever they could find, making uſe even of benches and ſtones, which they had carried to the top of the walls. They found the French were preparing to renew the attack, and comforted each other upon it.

Some time before ſun-riſe, the French were ready, when they marched by companies, and with great vigour, to the aſſault of the hôtel. They acquitted themſelves too well, and having brought ſcaling ladders, placed them againſt the walls, mounting them with the utmoſt eagerneſs, covered by their ſhields, otherwiſe they would not have ventured: it was held highly honourable to thoſe who mounted the firſt, as in truth it was a very brave act.

The Engliſh were not idle nor faint-hearted in their own defence, but fought marvellouſly well, and flung down upon the ſhields of the aſſailants ſtones and great beams of wood, with which they beat them ſo ſeverely, that they killed or wounded ſeveral. They did their duty excellently well, and ſo ſmall a fort was never ſeen to hold out ſo long againſt ſuch a force. This aſſault continued from early dawn until ſix o'clock.

CHAP. IV.

SIR JOHN CHANDOS COMES TO THE ASSISTANCE OF THE EARL OF PEMBROKE, BESIEGED IN PUIRENON.

BETWEEN ſix and nine o'clock, after the heat of the attack, the French, indignant that the Engliſh had made ſo long a defence, ſent orders to all the villagers thereabouts to bring pick-axes and mattocks to undermine the walls, which was what the Engliſh were moſt afraid of. The earl of Pembroke called one of his own ſquires, and ſaid to him; 'My friend, mount a horſe, and ſally out from the back gate, where they will make way for you, and ride as faſt as poſſible to Poitiers to ſir John Chandos, to tell him our ſituation and the imminent danger we are in: recommend me to him by this token.' He then took off his finger a rich ring of gold, adding, 'Give him this from me: he will know it well again.' The ſquire, who thought himſelf much honoured by this commiſſion, took the ring, mounted the beſt courſer he could find, and ſet off by the back gate during the attack, for they opened it for him. He took the road to Poitiers; and, whilſt he was making all the haſte he could, the aſſault was carried on warmly by the French, and as vigorouſly oppoſed by the Engliſh: indeed, it behoved them ſo to do.

We

We will now ſay ſomething of the firſt ſquire, who had left Puirenon at midnight, and who, having loſt his road, had wandered about all the night. When it was broad day, he knew his road, and made ſtraight for Poitiers; but, his horſe being tired, he did not arrive there until about nine o'clock, when he diſmounted in the ſquare before the hôtel of ſir John Chandos, and immediately entered it, having learnt that he was at maſs: he approached him, and, falling on his knees, delivered his meſſage.

Sir John Chandos, who had not yet recovered his vexation at the earl of Pembroke's refuſal to join him in his expeditions, was not very eager to give him aſſiſtance: he coldly ſaid, 'It will be almoſt impoſſible for us to get there in time and hear the whole maſs.' Soon after maſs the tables were ſpread, and dinner ſet out. His ſervants aſked ſir John, if he would dine: 'Yes,' ſaid he, 'ſince it is ready,' and then entered the hall, where his knights and ſquires had preceded him with water to waſh his hands. As he was thus employed, and before he ſat down to table, the ſecond ſquire from the earl of Pembroke entered the hall, and, having knelt down, drew the ring from his purſe, ſaying; 'Dear ſir, my lord the earl of Pembroke recommends himſelf to you by this token, and entreats you moſt earneſtly to come to his aſſiſtance, and reſcue him from the imminent danger he is now in at Puirenon.'

Sir John Chandos took the ring, and, having examined it, knew it well. He then replied, 'It

will not be poſſible for us to arrive there in time, if they be in the ſituation you deſcribe.' He added, 'Come, let us dine.' Sir John ſeated himſelf with his knights at table, and eat of the firſt courſe: as the ſecond was ſerved, and indeed begun on, ſir John Chandos, who had much thought on this buſineſs, raiſed his head, and, looking at his companions ſpoke as follows, which gave much pleaſure to thoſe around him.

'The earl of Pembroke (a lord of ſuch high birth and rank that he has even married a daughter of my natural lord the king of England, and is brother in arms as in every thing elſe with my lord of Cambridge,) entreats me ſo courteouſly that it behoves me to comply with his requeſt to ſuccour and reſcue him, if it be poſſible to arrive in time.' He then puſhed the table from him, and, riſing, ſaid to his knights and ſquires, 'Gentlemen, I am determined to go to Puirenon.' This was heard with joy, and they were ſoon ready to attend him. The trumpets ſounded, and every man at arms in Poitiers was mounted in the beſt way he could; for it had been ſpeedily told abroad, that ſir John Chandos was marching to Puirenon, to the aſſiſtance of the earl of Pembroke and his army, who were there beſieged by the French.

When theſe knights and ſquires took the field, they amounted to upwards of two hundred lances, and increaſed every moment. They marched with all haſte: news of this was brought to the French, who had conſtantly been engaged at this aſſault from day-break until noon, by their ſpies, who ſaid; 'Dear lords,

lords, look well to yourſelves; for ſir John Chandos has marched from Poitiers with upwards of two hundred lances, and is advancing with great haſte and a greater deſire to meet with you.'

When ſir Louis de Sancerre, ſir John de Vienne, ſir John de Beuil and the others who were preſent, heard this, the beſt informed among them ſaid; 'Our men are tired and worn down by their aſſaults upon the Engliſh, yeſterday and to-day: it will be much wiſer for us to make a handſome retreat with all we have gained, and our priſoners, than to wait the arrival of ſir John Chandos and his company, who are quite freſh; for we may loſe more than we can gain.'

This plan was immediately followed, for there was not a moment to loſe: the trumpets were ordered to ſound a retreat: their men aſſembled in a body, and, having ſent off their baggage, they themſelves took the road to la Roche-poſay.

The earl of Pembroke and thoſe with him, imagining the French muſt have had ſome intelligence, ſaid among themſelves; 'Chandos muſt certainly be on his march, for the French are retreating, not daring to wait his coming: come, come, let us immediately quit this place and take the road towards Poitiers and we ſhall meet him.' Thoſe who had horſes mounted them: and others went on foot, and ſeveral rode double. They thus left Puirenon, following the road to Poitiers: they had ſcarcely advanced a league before they met ſir John Chandos and his army in the condition I have before told; ſome on horſeback, ſome on

foot, and ſome riding double. Much joy was ſhewn on both ſides at this meeting; but ſir John ſaid, he was ſorely vexed that he had not been in time to have met the French. They rode together converſing for about three leagues, when they took leave of each other and ſeparated. Sir John Chandos returned to Poitiers; the earl of Pembroke to Mortagne, the place he had marched from; and the marſhal of France and his army to la Roche-poſay, where they refreſhed themſelves and divided their booty; they then retired to their garriſons, carrying with them their priſoners, whom they courteouſly admitted to ranſom, as the French and Engliſh have always been accuſtomed to act towards each other.

We will now return to the armies in Tournehem; and ſpeak of the death of the moſt courteous, noble and liberal queen that ever reigned in her time, the lady Philippa of Hainault, queen of England and of Ireland.

CHAP. V.

THE DEATH OF QUEEN PHILIPPA OF ENGLAND: SHE MAKES THREE REQUESTS TO THE KING ON HER DEATH-BED.—SOME FRENCHMEN, HAVING ATTACKED THE ENGLISH CAMP AT TOURNEHEM, ARE REPULSED BY SIR ROBERT DE NAMUR.

DURING the time that ſuch numbers of noblemen of the kingdom of France were aſſembled at Tournehem under the command of the duke

duke of Burgundy, and the duke of Lancaſter was encamped with his army in the valley oppoſite to them, a circumſtance happened in England, which, though ſo very common, was not the leſs unfortunate for the king, his children, and the whole kingdom. That excellent lady the queen of England (who had done ſo much good, and during her whole life had aſſiſted all knights, ladies and damſels who had applied to her, who had had ſuch boundleſs charity for all mankind, and who had naturally ſuch an affection for the Hainault nation, being the country from which ſhe ſprung,) lay at this time dangerouſly ill at Windſor-caſtle, and her diſorder daily increaſed.

When the good lady perceived her end approaching, ſhe called to the king, and, extending her right hand from under the bed-clothes, put it into the right hand of the king, who was very ſorrowful at heart, and thus ſpoke; 'We have enjoyed our union in happineſs, peace, and proſperity: I entreat, therefore, of you, that on our ſeparation, you will grant me three requeſts.' The king, with ſighs and tears, replied; 'Lady, aſk: whatever you requeſt ſhall be granted.' 'My lord, I beg you will acquit me of whatever engagements I may have entered into formerly with merchants for their wares, as well on this as on the other ſide of the ſea. I beſeech you alſo to fulfil whatever gifts or legacies I may have made, or left to churches, here or on the continent, wherein I have paid my devotions, as well as what I may have left to thoſe of both ſexes who have

been in my ſervice. Thirdly, I entreat that, when it ſhall pleaſe God to call you hence, you will not chooſe any other ſepulchre than mine, and that you will lie by my ſide in the cloiſters of Weſtminſter.' The king, in tears, replied, 'Lady, I grant them.'

Soon after, the good lady made the ſign of the croſs on her breaſt, and, having recommended to God the king and her youngeſt ſon, Thomas, who was preſent, gave up her ſpirit, which, I firmly believe, was caught by the holy angels and carried to the glory of Heaven; for ſhe had never done any thing, by thought or deed, that could endanger her loſing it. Thus died this queen of England, in the year of grace 1369, the vigil of the aſſumption of the Virgin, the 15th of Auguſt*.

Information of this loſs was carried to the Engliſh army at Tournehem, which greatly afflicted every one, but particularly her ſon the duke of Lancaſter. However, as there is no death but what muſt be paſſed over and forgotten, the Engliſh did not neglect to keep up very ſtrict diſcipline in their camp, where they remained a long time facing the French.

It happened that ſome of the French knights and ſquires, ſeeing the enemy every day before their eyes, held a converſation, and, after diſcuſſing the matter, agreed to meet on the morrow, at day-break, to ſkirmiſh with them, and beat up the guard.

* See her monument in Gough's Sepulchral Monuments, vol. i.

There were upwards of three hundred knights and ſquires, the greater part of them from the Vermandois, Artois, and Corbiois, who had entered into this agreement, and, without mentioning it to their marſhals, had each informed the other of their intentions. When the morning came for this expedition, they were all ready armed, mounted, and aſſembled. They rode forth in this array, nothing doubting of ſucceſs, and began to make a circuit round the hill of Tournehem, in order to gain an advantageous poſition, and to fall upon one of the wings of the Engliſh army.

This wing was allotted to ſir Robert de Namur and his people. Sir Robert had been on guard that night, but towards day-break had entered his tent, and was then ſitting at ſupper, quite armed, except his helmet, and the lord Deſpontin* with him. The French at this moment arrived at the quarters of ſir Robert, which were alſo thoſe of ſome other German and Engliſh Lords; but the guard very fortunately had not diſarmed themſelves: they immediately oppoſed the Frenchmen who came up ſpurring and galloping, and checked their career. News ſoon reached ſir Robert that his men were fighting, having been attacked by the French. In an inſtant, he puſhed the table from him where he had been ſeated, and ſaid to the lord Deſpontin, 'Come, come to the aſſiſtance of our men.' Inſtantly he fixed his helmet

* Lord Deſpontin. Q. Barnes calls him lord of Ponthieu.

on his head, and ordered his banner, which was placed before his tent, to be diſplayed. Some one ſaid, 'My lord, ſend to the duke of Lancaſter, and do not engage without him.' He bluntly replied: 'Not I: I ſhall go the ſhorteſt way I can to help my men. Thoſe may ſend to my lord of Lancaſter who will; but let all who love me follow me.'

He then advanced, ſword in hand, to meet the enemy: the Lord Deſpontin and ſir Henry de Sancelle were with him, as well as his other knights, who directly engaged in the battle, having found their men fighting with the French, in great numbers, and who, to ſpeak truth, ought to have done much this day: but no ſooner did they perceive ſir Robert de Namur marching with his banner than they wheeled about and gave up their plan, for they thought the whole army was ready to fall on them: indeed, it was ſo in different parts of the camp, for the ſun was now riſen.

A Vermandois knight was ſlain under the banner of ſir Robert de Namur, called ſir Robert de Coulogne, who was much regretted; for he was rich, amiable, and courteous, and an honourable knight in every ſtation.

Thus ended the affair. The French retreated without doing any thing more, for they were afraid of greater loſs than gain. Sir Robert did not purſue them farther than was wiſe, but brought back his men when he found the enemy was quite gone, and returned to his quarters.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY AND HIS ARMY DECAMP WITHOUT A BATTLE.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER RETURNS TO CALAIS.

SINCE this laſt affair, nothing happened worth relating. It was very diſpleaſing to many on both ſides that they thus remained ſo long without a battle: every day it was ſaid, 'We ſhall engage to-morrow;' but that morrow never came; for, as I have ſaid before, the duke of Burgundy would not act contrary to the orders of the king. The orders he received were very ſtrict; for there were continually meſſengers going from the king to the duke, and from the duke to the king on this ſubject.

At laſt the duke of Burgundy, as I was then informed, having conſidered that he was encamped at a very heavy expence, and could not remain ſo much longer with any honour; for he had upwards of four thouſand knights, while the enemy was but a handful in compariſon, with whom, however, he had not fought, nor had had any intentions of ſo doing: the duke, I ſay, ſent ſome of his knights to lay his ſituation before the king, and to explain to him his wiſhes. The king thought the duke judged rightly, and ordered him, on the receipt of his letters, to break up his camp, to diſmiſs his

his army, and come to Paris, where he himſelf was going.

When the duke received theſe orders, he ſent for the principal lords of his army, and told them ſecretly their contents; ſaying, 'We muſt break up our camp, for the king ſends for us back.' When it was midnight, thoſe to whom he had given this information, having packed up every thing, were mounted, and had ſet fire to their quarters. At this hour, ſir Henry de Sancelle was returning to his tent, having been on guard with ſir Robert de Namur's men, to whom he was attached; and ſeeing firſt one, then two, and then three fires in the enemy's camp, he ſaid to himſelf, 'Theſe French think, perhaps, to ſurpriſe us: they have the appearance of intending it. Let us go,' ſaid he to thoſe near him, 'to ſir Robert's tent, and awaken him, that, ſhould it be ſo, he may be prepared in time.' Sir Henry went thither, and, calling his chamberlains, told them, they muſt inſtantly awaken ſir Robert. They went to his bed-ſide and ſir Henry de Sancelle with them, who awakened him, and told him all that he had ſeen. Sir Robert made anſwer, 'We ſhall ſoon hear other news: let our men be inſtantly armed and made ready.' He himſelf was ſoon armed. When his men were drawn up, he had his banner diſplayed, and marched to the tent of the duke of Lancaſter, who was arming alſo, for he had received ſimilar information. It was not long before the different lords came thither, one after another: as they arrived,

rived, they were drawn up, and remained quiet, without any light.

The duke of Lancaſter ordered his marſhals to march the archers to where he hoped the French would make their attack, if they came; for he certainly expected a battle. When they had remained at their poſts for two hours, and ſaw no one advancing to them, they were more ſurpriſed than before. The duke called to him his lords, and aſked them what he had beſt now to do. Some replied one thing, and ſome another, and each defended his own opinion. The duke, perceiving that valiant knight ſir Walter Manny, ſaid; 'And you, ſir Walter, what do you adviſe?' 'I do not know,' replied ſir Walter; 'but, if you will follow my advice, I would draw up my men at arms and archers in order of battle, and would advance ſlowly; for, as it will ſoon be day, we ſhall then ſee clearly before us.'

The duke aſſented to this propoſal: but others were of a contrary opinion, and adviſed him not to march from where he was.

This diſcuſſion continued until orders were given for ſome of the troops of ſir Robert de Namur and ſir Waleran de Bourne * to mount their horſes, becauſe they were lightly accoutred and rode well. Thirty horſemen were choſen from the beſt mounted, and ſent off towards the French camp.

---

* Sir Waleran de Bourne. Q. Barnes calls him Van Bornico.

Whilſt

Whilſt they were gone on this expedition, ſir Walter Manny, addreſſing the duke, ſaid; 'My lord, never believe me again, if theſe French be not fled: mount your horſe, and order the others to do the ſame, that you may purſue them, and I will engage you will have a fine day of it.'

The duke replied, 'Sir Walter, I have hitherto always followed the advice of my council, and intend now doing ſo; for I can never believe that ſo many brave men at arms and noble knights would thus run away. Perhaps the fires we ſee may have been lighted to entrap us. Our ſcouts will ſoon return, and then we ſhall know the truth.'

As they were thus converſing, the ſcouts returned, and confirmed all that ſir Walter Manny had thought: they ſaid they had found none but ſome poor victuallers, who followed the army. Sir Walter Manny gained great credit. The duke went to his tent to diſarm: he would that day have dined in the French camp, but the fire was too great: he and his men at arms, however, ſupped there, and took up their quarters on the mountain for the night, and made themſelves comfortable with what they found there. On the morrow they decamped, and returned to Calais.

The duke of Burgundy, when he marched off, made his quarters at St. Omer, where he and all his army remained until they were diſbanded, and every man returned to his home. There was afterwards much trouble to re-aſſemble them again.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE, DESIROUS OF AVENGING HIMSELF FOR THE DEFEAT HE RECEIVED AT PUIRENON, MAKES AN INCURSION TO ANJOU.—THE ABBEY OF ST. SALVIN IN POITOU IS BETRAYED TO THE FRENCH, AND FORTIFIED.

THE ſame week that the armies quitted Tournehem, the earl of Pembroke (who was in Poitou, and had been much mortified at the defeat he had ſuffered from ſir Louis de Sancerre, ſir John de Vienne, ſir John de Bueil and the others at Puirenon, as has been related) reſolved to have his revenge, if poſſible; and for this end he marched from Mortagne with his army, which conſiſted of about two hundred lances, and came to Angoulême, where the prince received him moſt courteouſly. The earl entreated of him permiſſion to lead another expedition, and to lend him ſome of his men, as he was very anxious to avenge himſelf of the affronts he had ſuffered from the French. The prince, who had much affection for him, immediately granted his requeſt. Sir Hugh Calverly was juſt returned from his excurſion into the county of Armagnac, with five hundred fighting men; and the prince gave him leave to accompany the earl of Pembroke in his intended expedition.

He

He alſo requeſted the company of ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Percival de Coulongne, the lords de Pons, de Partenay and de Pinane, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, and ſeveral knights of the prince's houſehold, who willingly accepted the invitation, for they were ready for any excurſion: ſo that, when they were aſſembled, they amounted to five hundred lances, three hundred archers, and fifteen hundred foot ſoldiers, armed with pikes and ſhields, who followed the army on foot. This army marched, under the command of the earl of Pembroke as their leader, and took the road towards Anjou: where they no ſooner arrived than they began to deſtroy, and to do every damage to the country they paſſed through, by razing caſtles and forts, burning ſuch towns as could not hold out againſt them, and levying contributions on all the flat country as far as Saumur * on the Loire. They gained poſſeſſion of the ſuburbs, and began an aſſault on the town; but they could not take it, for ſir Robert de Sancerre was in it with a large body of men at arms, who defended it from ſuffering any damage: all the country round about it, however, was pillaged, burnt, and ruined.

Sir Hugh Calverly and his diviſion advanced to a bridge on the Loire, called le Pont de Cé †; when he defeated thoſe who guarded it, took the bridge, and placed ſuch a garriſon of his own men

* Saumur,—on the Loire, dioceſe of Angers.

† Pont de Cé.—Pont de Sé,—two leagues from Angers.

there,

there, after he had fortified it well, that they kept poſſeſſion of it for a long time.

The Engliſh, in this expedition, took a large abbey called St. Maur *, on the Loire, which they repaired and fortified, and placed therein a conſiderable garriſon, which, during the enſuing winter and ſummer, did great miſchief to the adjacent country.

At this time, there was in Poitou an abbey which ſtill exiſts, called St. Salvin †, ſituated ſeven leagues from Poitiers; and in this abbey there was a monk who hated the abbot, as he afterwards ſhewed. It was on account of this hatred which he bore him that he betrayed the abbot and the whole convent, and delivered up the abbey and the town to ſir Louis de St. Julien and to Carnet le Breton, who took poſſeſſion of it, repaired it, and made it a ſtrong garriſon.

Sir John Chandos was much vexed at St. Salvin being thus ſurpriſed, and not being able to retake it; for, as he was ſénéſchal of Poitou, he was angry that ſuch a houſe ſhould have been taken in his government, and declared, that if he ſhould live long enough, he would have it again by ſome means or other, and make them pay dearly for the inſult they had put upon him.

We will now quit Poitou, and return to the duke of Lancaſter.

---

* St. Maur, on the Loire, election of Saumur.

† St Salvin,—St. Savin,—a village in Poitou, election of Poitiers.

CHAP. VIII.

THE COUNTY OF ST. POL IN PICARDY IS PILLAGED AND RUINED BY THE ENGLISH.—SIR HUGH DE CHASTILLON IS TAKEN PRISONER.

WHEN the duke of Lancaſter had retreated to Calais after the decampment of Tournehem, as has been before related, and had refreſhed himſelf and men for three days, he reſolved, by advice of his council, to draw out his troops, and make an excurſion into France. His marſhals, the earl of Warwick and ſir Roger Beauchamp, were ordered to muſter the army, which orders they very readily obeyed, for they were deſirous of making an inroad on France.

The men at arms and archers marched from Calais in excellent array: every man was appriſed what he was to do, and where he was going. The firſt day's march was only five leagues from Calais. On the morrow, ther came before St. Omer, where there were many ſkirmiſhes at the gates; but the Engliſh did not make any long halt: they continued their march, and that night encamped on the heights of Herſault *. On the third day,

* Herſault. Q. if not Heriſſart; but that ſeems to be too great a diſtance.

they

they arrived at the city of Terouenne *, where was the count de St. Pol with a large company of men at arms. The Engliſh did not halt, but continued their march, taking the road to Heſdin †, and fixed their quarters at night on a ſmall river.

When the count de St. Pol found that the Engliſh were taking the road to his country, he knew they were not going thither for his good, for they hated him too much: he ſet out, therefore, in the night, and gave the government of the city to the lord de St. Py and ſir John de Roye ‡; and, riding hard, he arrived at his town of St. Pol ‖.

The Engliſh came before the place very early on the morrow morning, and ſeveral ſevere ſkirmiſhes happened; but the arrival of the count was fortunate for himſelf and for the town, as he, with the aſſiſtance of thoſe who had accompanied him, prevented the place from being taken. The duke of Lancaſter, therefore, and his army refreſhed themſelves at their eaſe in the county of St. Pol, which they overran, and did great damage to all the flat

---

* Terouenne——is now in ruins. It was taken by Henry VIII. by a ſtratagem of pointing wooden guns painted, which were thought to be real ones, and threatening to batter down the town, if not ſurrendered.

† Heſdin,——a ſtrong town in Artois, on the Canche.

‡ Two of my MSS. have different names, the lord de Sampy, ſir Guy de Roye. One has ſir John de Roye.

‖ St. Pol,——a town in Artois, five leagues from Heſdin.

country. They advanced to the caſtle of Pernes *, where the counteſs dowager reſided. They examined well the fort, and the duke ſounded the depth of the ditches with a lance: notwithſtanding this, they made no attack, though they ſhowed every appearance of it. They made no long ſtay, but continued their march, and went towards Lucheux †, a handſome town, which belonged to the count. They burnt the town, and, without touching the caſtle, continued their road for St. Riquier ‡.

The Engliſh did not march more than three or four leagues a-day, ſo that they burnt and deſtroyed all the countries they paſſed through. They croſſed the river Somme at Blanchetaque below Abbeville, and then entered the country of Vimeu ||, with the intention of puſhing forward to Harfleur on the Seine, in order to burn the navy of the king of France.

The count de St. Pol, and ſir Moreau de Fiennes, conſtable of France, with a large body of men at arms, purſued and hovered about the Engliſh army, ſo that they could not diſperse nor quit the ſtraight road, but were obliged to keep in a compact body, to be ready to combat the French ſhould they be ſo inclined.

---

* Caſtle of Pernes,—a town in Artois, three leagues from St. Pol.

† Lucheux,—a town of Picardy, near Doulens.

‡ St. Riquier,—an ancient town in Picardy, two leagues and a half from Abbeville.

|| Vimeu,—in Picardy, St. Valery is its capital.

In

In this manner they marched through Vimeu and the county of Eu: entering the archbiſhoprick of Rouén, they paſſed Dieppe, and then continued their march until they came before Harfleur, where they fixed their quarters.

The count de St. Pol had out-marched them, and had entered the town with two hundred lances, at the utmoſt. The Engliſh remained three days before Harfleur, but did nothing: on the fourth, they decamped, and returned through the lands of the lord d'Eſtouteville, whom they did not love much, and burnt and deſtroyed the whole or greater part. They then paſſed through Vexin Normand in their way to Oiſemont *, to recroſs the Somme at Blanchetaque.

Sir Hugh de Chaſtillon, maſter of the croſs-bows in France, was at this time captain and governor of Abbeville. When he heard that the duke of Lancaſter was returning that way, he armed himſelf, and ordered twelve of his people to do the ſame. On mounting their horſes, he ſaid he was going to view the guard of the gate of Rouvray, that it might not be wanting in defence, and that the Engliſh ſhould not find it too weakly guarded. It was early in the morning, and there was a thick fog.

Sir Nicholas Louvaine, who had been ſénéſchal of Ponthieu, and whom, this very year, ſir Hugh de Chaſtillon had taken and ranſomed for ten thou-

* Oiſemont,—a market-town in Picardy, five leagues from Abbeville.

ſand francs, remembered this ſo ſorely that, having a great deſire to recover his loſſes, he ſet out on the point of day from the duke's army, accompanied by only twenty men. As he was well acquainted with all the roads and paſſes of that country, having reſided there for upwards of three years, he intended lying in ambuſcade between Abbeville and the caſtle of Rouvray, in the hope of taking ſome prize: he had croſſed a ſmall rivulet which ran through a marſh, and hid himſelf and men in ſome old uninhabited houſes.

Sir Hugh never dreamed that the Engliſh would form an ambuſcade ſo near the town. Sir Nicolas and his men kept themſelves very quiet: they perceived ſir Hugh de Chaſtillon riding down the road which leads to Rouvray, with only twelve others, armed at all points, except his helmet, which one of his pages bore on a courſer behind him. He croſſed the little rivulet, and made for the gate of Rouvray to ſee what the guard of croſs-bowmen were about, and to enquire if they had heard or ſeen the Engliſh.

When ſir Nicholas Louvaine, who was on the watch, ſaw him, he recogniſed him directly, and was more rejoiced than if any one had given him twenty thouſand francs. He ſallied out from his ambuſh, ſaying; 'Follow me; here is what I wiſhed for: it is the maſter of the croſs-bows, and I aſk for nothing better.' Then ſticking ſpurs into his horſe, and pointing his lance, he came upon ſir Hugh, crying, 'Surrender, Chaſtillon, or thou art a dead man.' Sir Hugh, who was much

much puzzled to conjecture whence theſe men could come, had neither time to put on his helmet nor to mount his courſer: finding himſelf in ſuch a ſtrait, he aſked, 'To whom am I to ſurrender?' Sir Nicholas replied, 'To Louvaine, to Louvaine.' In order, therefore, to avoid the danger he could not eſcape from, he ſaid, 'I ſurrender.' He was then taken, and told, 'Ride on quickly, for the army of the duke of Lancaſter marches on before us.' On this occaſion was ſlain, a very valiant citizen of Abbeville, called Lawrence Dancons *, who was much regretted.

Thus was taken and entrapped ſir Hugh de Chaſtillon, at that time maſter of the croſs-bows in France and governor of Abbeville, through the good fortune of ſir Nicholas Louvaine: with which capture the duke of Lancaſter and the Engliſh were much rejoiced. On the other hand, the inhabitants of Abbeville were exceedingly vexed at it; but for the preſent they could not better themſelves.

The Engliſh marched on, croſſed the Somme at Blanchetaque, and then paſſed through the towns of Rue ſur mer and Montrieul ſur mer, until they at laſt arrived at Calais. The duke of Lancaſter there diſmiſſed all the foreigners, when ſir Waleran de Bourne and the Germans departed. The duke returned to England, and the Germans to their own country, as there was not any intention of continuing the war until the enſuing ſummer, for now

* Dancons. My two MSS. have Dentels.

Martinmas was paſſed: but the duke informed them, that in the approaching ſpring, he ſhould croſs the ſea with a greater force than he had hitherto done, and ſhould entreat his couſins the dukes of Gueldres and Juliers to accompany him into France.

We ſhall now be ſilent as to the affairs of Picardy, for indeed nothing of great moment happened ſince this time, and return to Poitou, where warlike deeds were oftener performed.

CHAP. IX.

SIR JOHN CHANDOS IS SLAIN IN A SKIRMISH.—THE FRENCH AT FIRST VICTORIOUS, ARE IN THE END DEFEATED.

SIR John Chandos, being ſénéſchal of Poitou, was ſeriouſly afflicted with the loſs of St. Salvin: he was continually deviſing means to retake it, whether by aſſault or by ſcalado was perfectly indifferent to him, ſo that he could gain it. He made many nightly ambuſcades, but none ſucceeded; for ſir Louis, who commanded in it, was very watchful, as he knew the capture of it had highly angered ſir John Chandos.

It happened that, on the night preceding the eve of the new year (1370), ſir John Chandos, who reſided

reſided in the city of Poitiers, had ſent out his ſummons to the barons and knights of Poitou to come to him as ſecretly as they could, for he was going on an expedition. The Poitevins would not refuſe him any thing, being much beloved by them: they obeyed his ſummons, and came to Poitiers. Sir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Louis de Harcourt, the lords de Pons, de Partenay, de Pinane, de Tannaybouton, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, ſir Maubrun de Linieres, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Baldwin de Franville, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, came thither, with many others.

When they were all aſſembled, they were full three hundred lances.'

They left Poitiers in the night, and no one, except the principal lords, knew whither they were going. The Engliſh, however, had ſcaling ladders, and every thing they might have occaſion for with them. They marched to St. Salvin; and, when there arrived, were told what was intended; upon which they all diſmounted, and, giving the horſes to their valets, the Engliſh deſcended into the ditch. It was then about midnight.

They were in this ſituation, and would very ſhortly have ſucceeded in their expedition, when they heard the guard of the fort wind his horn. The reaſon was this. That very night Carnet le Breton had come from la Roche-poſay, with forty lances, to St. Salvin, to requeſt ſir Louis de St. Julien to accompany him in an expedition to Poitou: he therefore awakened the guard and thoſe within the fort.

The Engliſh, who were on the oppoſite ſide, ignorant of the intentions of this body of Frenchmen wanting to enter the fort, thought they had been ſeen by the guard, or that ſpies had given information of their arrival to the garriſon. They immediately left the dich, and ſaid; 'Let us away; for this night we have been diſappointed in our ſcheme.' They mounted their horſes, and advanced in a body to Chauvigny on the river Creuſe, two ſhort leagues diſtant.

When all were arrived there, the Poitevins aſked ſir John Chandos if he wiſhed them to remain with him: he anſwered, 'No: you may return in God's name: I will to-day ſtay in this town.' The Poitevins departed, and with them ſome Engliſh knights: in all, about two hundred lances.

Sir John Chandos entered a hôtel, and ordered a fire to be lighted. Lord Thomas Percy, ſénéſchal of la Rochelle, and his men remained with him. Lord Thomas aſked ſir John Chandos if he intended ſtaying there that day: 'Yes,' replied ſir John: 'why do you aſk?' 'Becauſe, ſir, if you be determined not to go further, I ſhall beg of you to give me leave to make an excurſion, to ſee if I ſhall meet with any adventure.' 'In the name of God, go then,' replied ſir John. At theſe words, lord Thomas Percy ſet out, attended by about thirty lances. Sir John Chandos remained with his own people. Lord Thomas croſſed the bridge of Chauvigny, taking the longeſt road to Poitiers, having left ſir John Chandos.

Chandos quite low ſpirited for having failed in his intended attack on St. Salvin. He continued in the kitchen of the hôtel, warming himſelf at a ſtraw fire which his herald was making for him, converſing at the ſame time with his people, who very readily paſſed their jokes in hopes of curing him of his melancholy.

After he had remained ſome time, and was preparing to take a little reſt, and while he was aſking if it were yet day, a man entered the hôtel, and came before him, ſaying, 'My lord, I bring you news.' 'What is it?' aſked ſir John. 'My lord, the French have taken the field.' 'How doſt thou know this?' 'My lord, I ſet out from St. Salvin with them.' 'And what road have they taken?' 'My lord, that I cannot ſay for a certainty; but it ſeemed to me they followed the road to Poitiers.' 'And who are theſe French?' 'My lord, they are ſir Louis de St. Julien and Carnet le Breton, with their companies.' 'Well, it is indifferent to me,' replied ſir John: 'I have not any inclination to exert myſelf this day: they may be met with without my interference.'

He remained a conſiderable time very thoughtful: after having well conſidered, he added; 'Notwithſtanding what I have juſt ſaid, I think I ſhall do right to mount my horſe; for at all events I muſt return to Poitiers, and it will be ſoon day.' 'It is well judged,' replied the knights who were with him. Sir John ordered every thing to be got ready, and his knights having done the ſame, they mounted and ſet off, taking

taking the road to Poitiers, following the courſe of the river. The French might be about a good league before them on this ſame road, intending to croſs the river at the bridge of Luſſac *. The Engliſh ſuſpected this from perceiving the tracks of the horſes, and ſaid among themſelves, 'Either the French or lord Thomas Percy are juſt before us.' Shortly after this converſation, day appeared; for in the early part of January the mornings begin to be ſoon light. The French might be about a league from the bridge of Luſſac, when they perceived lord Thomas Percy and his men on the other ſide of the river. Lord Thomas had before ſeen them, and had ſet off full gallop to gain the bridge. They ſaid, 'There are the French: they are more in number than we are; let us haſten to take advantage of the bridge.'

When ſir Lewis and Carnet ſaw the Engliſh on the oppoſite ſide of the river, they alſo made haſte to gain the bridge: however the Engliſh arrived firſt, and were maſters of it. They all diſmounted, and drew themſelves up to defend and guard it.

The French likewiſe diſmounted on their arrival, and giving their horſes for the ſervants to lead them to the rear, took their lances, and advanced in good order, to attack the Engliſh and win the bridge. The Engliſh ſtood firm, although they were ſo few in compariſon with the enemy.

* Luſſac,—a town in Poitou, dioceſe of Poitiers

Whilſt the French and Bretons were conſidering the moſt advantageous manner to begin the onſet, ſir John Chandos arrives with his company, his banner diſplayed and flying in the wind. This was borne by a valiant man at arms, called James Allen, and was a pile gules on a field argent. They might be about forty lances, who eagerly haſtened to meet the French. As the Engliſh arrived at a ſmall hillock, about three furlongs from the bridge, the French ſervants, who were between this hillock and the bridge, ſaw them, and, being much frightened, ſaid, 'Come away: let us ſave ourſelves and our horſes.' They therefore ran off, leaving their maſters to ſhift as well as they could.

When ſir John Chandos, with diſplayed banner was come up to the French, whom he thought very lightly of, he began from horſeback to rail at them, ſaying; 'Do you hear, Frenchmen: you are miſchievous men at arms: you make incurſions night and day at your pleaſure: you take towns and caſtles in Poitou, of which I am ſénéſchal. You ranſom poor people without my leave, as if the country were your own; but, by God, it is not. Sir Louis, ſir Louis, you and Carnet are too much the maſters. It is upwards of a year and a half that I have been endeavouring to meet you. Now, thanks to God, I do ſo, and will tell you my mind. We will now try which of us is the ſtrongeſt in this country. It has been often told me, that you were very deſirous of ſeeing me: you have now that pleaſure. I am

John

John Chandos: look at me well; and, if God pleaſe, we will now put to the proof your great deeds of arms which are ſo renowned.'

With ſuch words as theſe did ſir John Chandos greet them: he would not have wiſhed to have been any where elſe, ſo eager was he to fight with them.

Sir Louis and Carnet kept themſelves in a cloſe body, as if they were willing to engage. Lord Thomas Percy and the Engliſh on the other ſide of the bridge knew nothing of what had paſſed, for the bridge was very high in the middle, which prevented them from ſeeing over it.

During this ſcoffing of ſir John Chandos, a Breton drew his ſword, and could not reſiſt from beginning the battle: he ſtruck an Engliſh ſquire, named Simkin Dodenhale, and beat him ſo much about the breaſt with his ſword that he knocked him off his horſe on the ground. Sir John Chandos, who heard the noiſe behind him, turned round, and ſaw his ſquire on the ground and perſons beating him. This enraged him more than before: he ſaid to his men, 'Sirs, what are you about? how ſuffer you this man to be ſlain? Diſmount, diſmount:' and at the inſtant he was on foot, as were all his company. Simkin was reſcued, and the battle began.

Sir John Chandos, who was a ſtrong and bold knight, and cool in all his undertakings, had his banner advanced before him, ſurrounded by his men, with the ſcutcheon above his arms, he himſelf was dreſſed in a large robe which fell to the ground,

ground, blazoned with his arms on white ſarcenet, argent a pile gules; one on his breaſt, and the other on his back; ſo that he appeared reſolved on ſome adventurous undertaking; and in this ſtate, with ſword in hand, he advanced on foot towards the enemy.

This morning there had been a hoar froſt, which had made the ground ſlippery; ſo that as he marched he entangled his legs with his robe, which was of the longeſt, and made a ſtumble: during which time a ſquire, called James de St. Martin (a ſtrong expert man), made a thruſt at him with his lance, which hit him in the face, below the eye, between the noſe and forehead. Sir John Chandos did not ſee the aim of the ſtroke, for he had loſt the eye on that ſide five years ago, on the heaths of Bourdeaux, at the chace of a ſtag: what added to this misfortune, ſir John had not put down his vizor, ſo that in ſtumbling he bore upon the lance, and helped it to enter into him. The lance, which had been ſtruck from a ſtrong arm, hit him ſo ſeverely that it entered as far as the brain, and then the ſquire drew it back to him again.

The great pain was too much for ſir John, ſo he fell to the ground, and turned twice over in great agony, like one who had received his death wound. Indeed, ſince the blow, he never uttered a word. His people, on ſeeing this miſhap, were like madmen. His uncle, ſir Edward Clifford, haſtily advanced, and ſtriding over the body, (for the French were endeavouring to get poſſeſ-

ſion

ſion of it), defended it moſt valiantly, and gave ſuch well directed blows with his ſword that none dared to approach him. Two other knights, namely ſir John Chambo and ſir Bertrand de Caſſilies*, were like men diſtracted at ſeeing their maſter lie thus on the ground.

The Bretons, who were more numerous than the Engliſh, were much rejoiced when they ſaw their chief thus proſtrate, and greatly hoped he was mortally wounded. They therefore advanced, crying out, 'By God, my lords of England, you will all ſtay with us, for you cannot now eſcape.'

The Engliſh performed wonderful feats of arms, as well to extricate themſelves from the danger they were in as to revenge their commander, ſir John Chandos, whom they ſaw in ſo piteous a ſtate. A ſquire attached to ſir John marked out this James de St. Martin, who had given the blow: he fell upon him in ſuch a rage, and ſtruck him with his lance as he was flying, that he ran him through both his thighs, and then withdrew his lance: however, in ſpite of this, James de St. Martin continued the fight.

Now if lord Thomas Percy, who had firſt arrived at the bridge, had imagined any thing of what was going forwards, ſir John Chandos' men would have been conſiderably reinforced; but it was otherwiſe decreed: for, not hearing any thing of the Bretons ſince he had ſeen them advancing

* Sir John Chambo,—ſir John Caſſilies. Q. Barnes calls the laſt Caſe.

in

in a large body towards the bridge, he thought they might have retreated; ſo that lord Thomas and his men continued their march, keeping the road to Poitiers, ignorant of what was paſſing.

Though the Engliſh fought ſo bravely at the bridge of Luſſac, in the end they could not withſtand the force of the Bretons and French, but were defeated, and the greater part made priſoners. Sir Edward Clifford ſtood firm, and would not quit the body of his nephew.

If the French had had their horſes, they would have gone off with honour, and have carried with them good priſoners; but, as I have before ſaid, their ſervants had gone away with them. Thoſe of the Engliſh alſo had retreated, and quitted the ſcene of battle. They remained therefore in bad plight, which ſorely vexed them, and ſaid among themſelves, 'This is a bad piece of buſineſs: the field is our own, and yet we cannot return through the fault of our ſervants. It is not proper for us who are armed and fatigued to march through this country on foot, which is quite againſt us; and we are upwards of ſix leagues from the neareſt of any of our fortreſſes. We have, beſides our wounded and ſlain, whom we cannot leave behind.

As they were in this ſituation, not knowing what to do, and had ſent off two or three of the Bretons, diſarmed, to hunt after and endeavour to find their ſervants, they perceived advancing towards them, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Louis de Harcourt, the lords de Partenay, de Tannaybouton, d'Argenton, de Pinane, ſir James de Surgeres,

Surgeres, and ſeveral others. They were full two hundred lances, and were ſeeking for the French; for they had received information that they were out on an excurſion, and were then following the traces of their horſes. They came forwards, therefore, with diſplayed banners fluttering in the wind, and marching in a diſorderly manner.

The moment the Bretons and French ſaw them they knew them for their enemies the barons and knights of Poitou. They therefore ſaid to the Engliſh: 'You ſee that body of men coming to your aſſiſtance: we know we cannot withſtand them: therefore, calling each by his name, 'you are our priſoners; but we give you your liberty, on condition that you take care to keep us company; and we ſurrender ourſelves to you, for we have it more at heart to give ourſelves up to you than to thoſe who are coming.' They anſwered, 'God's will be done.' The Engliſh thus obtained their liberty.

The Poitevins ſoon arrived, with their lances in their reſts, ſhouting their war-cries; but the Bretons and French, retreating on one ſide, ſaid, 'Holla! ſtop my lords: we are priſoners already.' The Engliſh teſtified to the truth of this by adding, 'It is ſo: they belong to us.' Carnet was priſoner to ſir Bertrand de Caſſilies and ſir Louis de St. Julien to ſir John Chambo: there was not one, who had not his maſter.'

Theſe barons and knights of Poitou were ſtruck with grief when they ſaw their ſénéſchal, ſir John Chandos, lying in ſo doleful a way, and not able to

ſpeak

ſpeak. They began grievouſly to lament his loſs, ſaying; 'Flower of knighthood! oh, ſir John Chandos! curſed be the forging of that lance which wounded thee, and which has thus endangered thy life.' Thoſe who were around the body moſt tenderly bewailed him, which he heard, and anſwered with groans, but could not articulate a word. They wrung their hands, and tore their hair, uttering cries and complaints, more eſpecially thoſe who belonged to his houſehold.

Sir John Chandos was diſarmed very gently by his own ſervants, laid upon ſhields and targets, and carried at a foot's pace to Mortemer, the neareſt fort to the place where they were. The other barons and knights returned to Poitiers, carrying with them their priſoners. I heard that James Martin, he who had wounded ſir John Chandos, ſuffered ſo much from his wounds that he died at Poitiers.

That gallant knight only ſurvived one day and night. God have mercy on his ſoul! for never ſince a hundred years did there exiſt among the Engliſh one more courteous, nor fuller of every virtue and good quality than him.

When the prince, princeſs, earls of Cambridge and Pembroke, and the other Engliſh knights in Guienne heard of this event, they were completely diſconcerted, and ſaid, they had now loſt every thing on both ſides of the ſea. Sir John was ſincerely regretted by his friends of each ſex: and ſome lords in France bewailed his loſs. Thus it

happens through life. The Engliſh loved him for all the excellent qualities he was poſſeſſed of. The French hated him becauſe they were afraid of him. Not but that I have heard him at the time regretted by renowned knights in France; for they ſaid it was great pity he was ſlain, and that, if he could have been taken priſoner, he was ſo wiſe and full of devices, he would have found ſome means of eſtabliſhing a peace between France and England; and was ſo much beloved by the king of England and his court that they would have believed what he ſhould have ſaid in preference to all others. Thus were the French and Engliſh great loſers by his death, for never have I heard otherwiſe but the Engliſh the moſt, for by his valour and prudence Guienne might have been totally recovered *.

---

* Sir John Chandos was buried at Mortemer. Underneath is his epitaph, from les Annales d'Aquitaine par Bouchet.

Je Jehan Chandault, des anglois capitaine,
Fort chevalier, de Poictou ſénéſchal
Après avoir fait guerre très lointaine
Au rois francois, tant à pied qu' â cheval
Et pris Bertrand de Gueſclin en un val,
Les Poitevins prés Luſſac, me diffirent,
A Mortemer, mon corps enterrer firent,
En un cercueil elevé tout de neuf,
L'an mil trois cens avec ſeixante neuf.

He founded and endowed the carmelite convent at Poitiers.

' He was never married. Elizabeth and Eleanor, two of his ſiſters, (the latter being the wife of ſir Roger Collins) and Iſabella, daughter to Margaret the third ſiſter, at that time married to ſir John Anneſley, were found to be his next heirs.' BARNES.

Lord

Lord Thomas Percy was appointed ſénéſchal of Poitou after the death of ſir John Chandos. His eſtates of St. Sauveur le Vicomte fell to the king of England, who gave them to one of his own knights, by name Sir Aleyne Boxhull *, an uncommonly able man. The prince of Wales ſucceeded as heir to the other riches of ſir John Chandos, as he was never married, and therefore had no children, to the amount of four hundred thouſand francs †.

Shortly afterwards, thoſe captains who had been made priſoners at the bridge of Luſſac were ranſomed, and received their freedom on paying down the ſums agreed on, in which the king of France aſſiſted them. Sir Louis de St. Julien, ſir William des Bourdes and Carnet le Breton returned to their garriſons.

---

* Sir Aleyne Boxhull—was the 52d knight of the Garter, conſtable of the Tower of London, cuſtos of the parks of Clarendon, &c. He lies buried near St. Erkenwalde's ſhrine in St. Paul's church, about the year 1380.

Sir Aleyne Boxhull had a commiſſion to reſtrain the exceſſes of Charles de Navarre in Normandy, and to put the caſtle in good repair, dated the 24th November, 1370.—RYMER.

† I ſhould imagine Froiſſart muſt mean that the prince inherited all he poſſeſſed in Aquitaine, &c. but his ſiſter's children were his heirs in England.

CHAP. X.

THE LORD DE COUCY AND THE LORD DE POMMIERS ARE UNWILLING TO TAKE PART WITH EITHER SIDE IN THIS WAR.—THE LORDS DE MALEVAL AND DE MARNEIL TURN TO THE FRENCH.

AT this time, there were knights in France greatly hurt at ſeeing this war between the two kings carried on with increaſing vigour; and in particular, the lord de Coucy, who was much intereſted in it, as indeed he ought to be, for he held a very large eſtate in England, as well in his own right as in that of his wife, who was daughter of the king of England; which eſtate it would be neceſſary for him to renounce, if he wiſhed to ſerve the king of France, whoſe kinſman and countryman he was: he therefore thought it moſt profitable to diſſemble between the two kings, and to travel to foreign parts. He very wiſely took all his meaſures; and, having obtained leave of the king of France, he ſet out with few attendants, and went to Savoy, where he was honourably received by the earl, barons and knights of that country. When he had remained there as long as he judged proper, he departed, and, continuing his road, entered Lombardy, viſited the lords of Milan, the Lords Galeas and lord Barnabo Viſconti, when at firſt he was made heartily welcome by them.

In

In like manner did ſir Aimemon de Pommiers, who was one of the princeſs's knights, quit the duchy of Aquitaine. He declared, that during this war, he would not bear arms for one ſide nor the other. This knight croſſed the ſea to Cyprus, he viſited the holy ſepulchre, and travelled to ſeveral other places.

At this period, ſir John de Bourbon * came to Paris. He held ſome lands of the prince; and the king of France would have gladly ſeen him return the homage to the prince, but the count de la Marche would not liſten to it. The lord de Pierre Buffiere, a Limouſin knight at that time at Paris, followed his example. But two other Barons and great lords in Limouſin unfortunately acted otherwiſe: ſir Louis de Maleval and ſir Raymond de Marneil his nephew, who being at Paris turned Frenchmen, and from their fortreſſes afterwards made a diſaſtrous war on the prince.

The king of England and his council were much vexed at this; for it appeared that the barons and knights of Guienne thus changed their ſides without any conſtraint, and of their own free will. The king therefore, by the advice of his council, ordered letters to be written and ſealed with his ſeal, which he ordered to be ſent by two or three of his knights, into Poitou and Aquitaine, to publiſh them in all the cities, caſtles and principal towns.

* Sir John de Bourbon. 'He was ſon of ſir James de Bourbon who combated the free companies, chapter ccxxv, and was count de la Marche.'—Denys Sauvage—*Annot.* 120.

At this time, ſir Caponnel de Caponnal was delivered from his priſon at Agen, in exchange for one of the prince's knights, by name ſir Thomas Banaſter, who had been taken in a ſkirmiſh before Perigord. But the counſellor of ſtate who had been ſent with him remained priſoner in Agen, and ſir Caponnel returned to France. We will report the letter which the king of England ſent into Aquitaine.

CHAP. XI.

THE FORM OF THE LETTER WHICH THE ENGLISH KING SENT INTO AQUITAINE.—CHATELHERAUT IS TAKEN BY THE FRENCH, AND BELLEPERCHE IS BESIEGED.

EDWARD, by the grace of GOD, king of England, lord of Ireland and of Aquitaine, to all who ſhall ſee or hear theſe preſent letters: Know, that we having conſidered the matter of the boundaries of our Lordſhip of Aquitaine, as well as its extent under various lords, have had information relative to ſome oppreſſions done, or intended to have been done, by our very dear ſon the prince of Wales, to this lordſhip aforeſaid: for which cauſe we hold it a duty to endeavour to obviate and remedy any ſuch improper acts, and

to

to conciliate all hatred and rancour that may have ariſen between us and our loyal friends and ſubjects. We therefore announce, pronounce and ordain, out of our deliberate and perfect good will, and by the reſolutions of our council for this cauſe aſſembled, that our very dear ſon the prince of Wales deſiſt from all ſorts of exactions, done or about to be done; and that he reſtore and make reſtitution to all of each ſex who may have been oppreſſed by him, or by his officers in Aquitaine, with all coſts, fees and expenſes that they may have incurred under the name of theſe taxes, aids or fouages.

And if any of our feal ſubjects and friends, as well prelates as other members of the church, univerſities, barons, knights, townſhips, inhabitants of cities and large towns have turned, or may be willing to turn, through bad information or weak advice, to the party of our adverſary the king of France, we pardon this miſdeed, if, after having read this letter, they ſhall return to us within one month from the date hereof. And we entreat thoſe our loyal and truſty friends, that they ſo comport themſelves not to draw on them any reproach as to their faith and homage; which thing would greatly diſpleaſe us, and with ſorrow ſhould we perceive it. If our very dear ſon the prince of Wales, or any of his dependants complain of being hurt or oppreſſed, either now or in former times, we will have ſuch oppreſſions amended; ſo that in reaſon it may be ſufficient to encourage love, peace and concord between us and thoſe

within our boundaries in our aforeſaid lordſhip. And, in order that theſe things may be publicly known, we will that each perſon have a copy of this preſent letter, the conditions of which we have ſolemnly ſworn to obſerve, and not break through, upon the body of JESUS CHRIST, in the preſence of our very dear ſon John duke of Lancaſter, William earl of Saliſbury, the earl of Warwick, the earl of Hereford, Walter Manny, the baſtard of Percy, lords Neville, Bourchier and Stafford, Richard Pembridge, Roger Beauchamp, Guy Brian, the lords Mohun and Delaware, Aleyne Boxhul and Richard Sterry, knights. Given at our palace of Weſtminſter, the fifth day of November, in the forty-fourth year of our reign *.

This letter was carried by two of the king of England's knights into the principality and duchy of Aquitaine, proclaimed and publiſhed every where. Copies of it were promptly and ſecretly ſent to Paris, to the viſcount de la Rochechouart, the lords de Maleval and de Marneil, as well to ſeveral others of the French nation as to thoſe who had turned to that intereſt.

Notwithſtanding the letter they had proclaimed in the country of Aquitaine and elſewhere, I never heard that it had any effect, or that any one was prevented by it from following his own inclinations; but that more turned to the party of

* This letter is not in Rymer.

France,

France, and the French daily advanced in their conqueſts.

As ſoon as ſir Louis de St. Julien was returned to la Roche-poſay, ſir William des Bourdes to his garriſon of la Haye in Touraine, and Carnet le Breton * to St. Savin, they ſecretly planned a new expedition of men at arms, and companions well mounted on whom they could depend. They ſet off to ſcale the walls of the town of Chatelheraut, and, arriving there at early morn, would have made priſoner ſir Louis de Harcourt, who was ſleeping at his hôtel in the town, not any way ſuſpecting ſuch an enterpriſe, if he had not fled with his bed-clothes, without ſhoes or ſtockings, from houſe to houſe, and from garden to garden, in great dread of being taken by the French, who had ſcaled the walls of the town, until at laſt he arrived at the bridge of Chatelheraut, which his people had fortified: there he ſaved himſelf, and remained a conſiderable time.

The Bretons and French, however, were maſters of the whole town, and placed a ſtrong garriſon in it, of which Carnet was captain. This garriſon advanced daily to engage with thoſe who ſtill kept

* His name was Jean de Keranlouet. In the proofs attached to the Hiſtoire de la Bretagne, are ſeveral acquittances from Jean de Keranlouet, in which he is ſtiled, *Ecuyer, Huiſſier, d'Armes du Roi nôtre Sire, Capitaine de la Ville de la Roche-poſay*, for his own pay as well as for his ſoldiers. He was to conduct four hundred combatants into Guienne 1371; and alſo to march to the aſſiſtance of Moncontour.

poſſeſſion

poſſeſſion of the bridge; and many a gallant ſkirmiſh and feat of arms were performed.

Duke Louis de Bourbon was much enraged that the Engliſh and free companies ſhould keep poſſeſſion of his country, the Bourbonois, and that Ortigo, Bernard de Wiſt and Bernard de la Salle, ſhould hold his caſtle of Belleperche, and detain his mother priſoner in it: he reſolved therefore, to ſet on foot an expedition of men at arms, and lay ſiege to the caſtle of Belleperche, which, he declared he would not quit until he had re-taken it. He ſpoke of it to the king of France, who inſtantly promiſed to aſſiſt him in the ſiege with men and money. He left Paris, having ordered his rendezvous at Moulins in the Bourbonois, and at St. Pourſaint *, whither there came a numerous body of men at arms and able combatants.

The lord de Beaujeu came to ſerve him, with three hundred lances: the lords de Villars and de Roucillon, with one hundred; and numbers of barons and knights from Auvergne and Forêts, of which he was lord paramount, through the lady his wife, the daughter of that gallant lord Beroald count dauphin.

The duke arrived and fixed his quartets before the caſtle of Belleperche, where he built a large and ſtrong redoubt, in which his men might be ſheltered every night, and ſkirmiſh with the garriſon during the day. He had alſo brought and

* St. Pourſaint,—a town in Auvergne, dioceſe of Clermont.

pointed

pointed againſt the caſtle four large machines, which kept continually throwing, night and day, ſtones and logs of wood, ſo that they broke through the roofs of all the houſes, and beat down the greater part of the towers.

The mother of the duke of Bourbon, who was a priſoner within the caſtle, was much alarmed, and ſent frequently to entreat her ſon to abſtain from this mode of attack, for theſe machines annoyed her exceedingly; but the duke, who knew for certain that theſe requeſts came from his enemies, replied that he would not deſiſt happen what would.

When the garriſon found themſelves ſo much harraſſed, and that the French force was daily increaſing; for ſir Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, had juſt arrived with a large body of men at arms; they reſolved to ſend and acquaint ſir John Devereux, ſénéchal of Limouſin, who reſided at la Souteraine*, two ſhort days journey from them, of their diſtreſs, and who knew that, when theſe lords of Poitou and Gaſcony had made an excurſion from Quercy, it was upon the faith, that if they ſhould take any caſtles in France, and were beſieged in them, they would be aſſiſted.

They wrote their letters, and ſent them off in the night by one of their ſervants to the caſtle of ſir John Devereux. Sir John recognized the meſſenger by the tokens he mentioned, and, having

---

* La Souteraine,—a town in Limouſin, about two leagues from Limoges.

read

read the letters, ſaid, 'that he would moſt willingly acquit himſelf of his engagement, and that the more effectually to do ſo, he would immediately wait on the prince and the lords who were with him, at Angoulême, and exert himſelf ſo that the garriſon of Belleperche ſhould be reinforced.'

Sir John Devereux ſet out, after having given proper directions reſpecting his caſtle and garriſon to his officers, and, being arrived at Angoulême, found there the prince, the earl of Cambridge, the earl of Pembroke, ſir John Montague, ſir Robert Knolles, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Thomas Felton, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, the captal de Buch and many others. He explained to them, how theſe free companies in the caſtle of Belleperche were beſieged and much ſtraitened by the French under the duke de Bourbon and the count de St. Pol*. The lords, on hearing this ſtatement, replied with great cheerfulneſs, that they muſt be relieved, according to the promiſes which had been made them.

This buſineſs was intruſted to the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke; and the prince iſſued a ſummons to all his vaſſals, who, in ſight of it, were to aſſemble in the town of Limoges. Upon which, knights, ſquires, free companies, and men

* Denys Sauvage thinks it ought to be the count de Sancerre, as the count de St. Pol's name has not been mentioned before. I ſhould be of this opinion, if every copy I have, printed and MS. did not ſay St. Pol.

at

at arms, marched to that place, according to their orders; and, when they were muſtered, they amounted to upwards of fifteen hundred lances and about three thouſand others. They marched to Belleperche, where they encamped themſelves oppoſite to the French.

The French kept themſelves cloſe in their redoubt, which was as ſtrong and as well fortified as a good town might be. The Engliſh foragers were at a loſs where to ſeek for proviſions, ſo that, whenever it was poſſible, ſome were brought to them from Poitiers.

Sir Louis de Sancerre, marſhal of France, gave exact information of the number and condition of the Engliſh to the king of France, and to thoſe knights who had remained at Paris: he ſent alſo a proclamation, which he had affixed to the gates of the palace. It ran in theſe words:

'Ye knights and ſquires who are anxious of renown, and ſeek for deeds of arms, I inform you for a truth, that the earl of Cambridge and the earl of Pembroke are arrived with their troops at Belleperche, with the intention of raſing the ſiege which we have ſo long made: we have ſo much ſtraitened the garriſon of the caſtle that it muſt immediately ſurrender, or our enimies beat us in a pitched battle. Come therefore hither, directly, for you will have opportunities of exhibiting your proweſs in arms; and know that the Engliſh are encamped ſo much apart, and in ſuch poſitions, that they may be wonderfully annoyed.'

Upon

Upon this exhortation and requeſt of the marſhal, ſeveral good knights and ſquires of France advanced to thoſe parts; and I know myſelf that the governor of Blois, named Alart de Touſtanne, went thither with fifty lances; as did alſo the count de Porcien, and his brother ſir Hugh de Porcien.

CHAP. XII.

THE EARLS OF CAMBRIDGE AND PEMBROKE CARRY OFF THE MOTHER OF THE DUKE OF BOURBON WITH THE GARRISON OF BELLEPERCHE.—THE DUKE OF BOURBON TAKES POSSESSION OF THAT CASTLE.

WHEN the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke had remained before the French army at Belleperche fifteen days, and did not ſee any ſigns of the French quitting their redoubt to fight with them, they called a council, in which they reſolved to ſend to them a herald, to know what they meant to do. Chandos the herald was ordered on this buſineſs, and it was repeated to him what he was to ſay: he therefore went to them, and ſaid; 'My Maſters and lords ſend me to you, and inform you by my mouth, that they are quite aſtoniſhed you have allowed them to remain fifteen days here, and have not ſallied out of your

your fort to give them battle. They therefore tell you, that if you will come forth to meet them, they will permit you to chooſe any plot of ground for the field of battle; and let God give the event of it to whomſoever he pleaſes.'

The duke of Bourbon made to this the following reply: 'Chandos, you will tell your maſters, that I ſhall not combat as they may wiſh or deſire. I know well enough where they are; but for all that, I will not quit my fort nor raiſe the ſiege, until I ſhall have re-conquered the caſtle of Belleperche.' 'My lord,' anſwered the herald, 'I will not fail to report what you have ſaid.'

The herald ſet out, and on his return gave the duke's anſwer, which was not very agreeable. They called another council, and when it was over, gave to Chandos a propoſal, for him to carry to the French He did ſo, and ſaid; 'Gentlemen, my lords and maſters let you know, that ſince you are not willing to accept the offer they have made you, three days hence, between nine and twelve o'clock in the morning, you, my lord duke of Bourbon, will ſee your lady-mother placed on horſeback, and carried away. Conſider this, and reſcue her if you can.'

The duke anſwered; 'Chandos, Chandos, tell your maſters, they carry on a moſt diſgraceful war, when they ſeize an ancient lady from among her domeſtics, and carry her away like a priſoner. It was never ſeen formerly, that in the warfare between gentlemen, ladies or damſels were treated as priſoners. It will certainly be very unpleaſant

to

to me to ſee my lady-mother thus carried off: we muſt recover her as ſoon as we can: but the caſtle they cannot take with them: that, therefore, we will have. Since you have twice come hither with propoſitions, you will bear this from me to your maſters, that if they will draw out fifty men, we will draw out the ſame number, and let the victory fall where it may.' 'My lord,' replied the herald, 'I will relate to them every thing you have told me.'

At theſe words, Chandos left them, and returned to the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke and the other lords, and told them the offer the duke of Bourbon had ſent them. They were adviſed not to accept it. Preparations were therefore made for the departure of the army, and to carry off with them the lady and the garriſon, which had been exceedingly harraſſed by the machines of the enemy.

When the appointed day arrived, they ordered their trumpets to ſound at early morning: upon which every one armed himſelf and drew up, both horſe and foot, in order of battle, as if they expected a combat, with their banners and pennons flying before them. In this manner were they arrayed; and on this day ſir John Montague, nephew to the earl of Saliſbury, diſplayed his banner. They had ordered their trumpets and minſtrels to ſound very loud; and at nine o'clock the garriſon and madame de Bourbon came out of the caſtle of Belleperche. They mounted her on a palfrey

palfrey handſomely equipped for her. She was accompanied by her ladies and damſels.

The Engliſh army marched away at mid-day. Sir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt and ſir John Devereux * attended upon madame de Bourbon; and in this manner they returned to the principality, where the lady remained a conſiderable time a priſoner to the free companions at la Roche Vaucloix in Limouſin-†.

This capture never pleaſed the prince, who, whenever it was mentioned, ſaid, that if any others than the free companies had taken the ducheſs, ſhe ſhould inſtantly have had her liberty: and when the captains of theſe free companies ſpoke to him on the ſubject, he told them to

* Sir John Devereux—banneret—76th knight of the Garter, a baron from the 8th to the 16th Richard II.—See Dugdale.—Steward of the houſehold to Richard II. conſtable and governor of the cinque ports. Died ſuddenly 16th Richard II. Buried Grayfriars, London.

'Sir Nicholas Lovaine held Penſhurſt 44th Edward III. and married Margaret, eldeſt daughter of John Vere, earl of Oxford,—re-married to Henry lord Beaumont, and after to ſir John Devereux, knight of the Garter, lord warden of the cinque ports, ſteward of the houſehold 11th Richard II.; in whoſe 16th year he had licence to embattle his manſion-houſe at Penſhurſt, and his daughter and heireſs was married to William lord Fitzwalter, but he only enjoyed this manor in right of his wife.'—*Anſtis MSS. from Philpot's Kent*, p. 270.

† In the curious life of the duke de Bourbon, printed at Paris 1612, from old MSS. the account of this ſiege is very differently related, and entirely to the honour of the French. The ducheſs is there ſaid to be carried priſoner to the tower of Bron, near to Brouage on the ſea-coaſt.

make ſome ſort of an exchange, for him to get back his knight, ſir Simon Burley*, whom the French had taken.

You may ſuppoſe the duke of Bourbon was greatly incenſed when he ſaw his lady-mother carried away from the caſtle of Belleperche in the Bourbonois. Soon after her departure, he marched from the redoubt, and ſent his men to take poſſeſſion of his own caſtle of Belleperche, which the Engliſh had left quite empty.

Thus ended this grand expedition, and each withdrew to his usual place of reſidence. The French, who were under the duke of Bourbon retired to the garriſons from whence they had come. The duke returned with his knights and ſquires to the king of France, who received him with great joy, and entertained him handſomely. The earl of Cambridge went to his brother at Angoulême; and the earl of Pembroke and his troops to Mortagne in Poitou. Thoſe free companies and men at arms who had been in Belleperche went into Poitou and Saintonge, ſeeking for proviſions, and committing many diſgraceful acts, from which they had not the inclination to refrain themſelves, nor power to reſtrain others.

Sir Robert Knolles, ſhortly after this, left the prince, and returned to his caſtle of Derval in Brittany, where he had not been a month, before

* Sir Simon Burley—knight—was 75th knight of the Garter, warden of the cinque ports, governor of Windſor and Dover caſtles. Beheaded 1388. See Hollingſhed.

the

the king of England ſent him poſitive orders to ſet out, without delay, and croſs the ſea to him in England, as he would find his profit in it. Sir Robert very willingly obeyed this ſummons: having made his preparations, he embarked and landed in Cornwall, at St. Michael's Mount, and thence continued his road until he arrived at Windſor, where he found the king, who was right glad to ſee him, as were all the Engliſh barons; for they thought they ſhould have much need of him, as he was ſo great a captain and leader of men at arms.

CHAP. XIII.

THE FOUR BROTHERS OF FRANCE HAVE A MEETING.—THEIR PREPARATIONS FOR THE WAR.—THE MOTHER OF THE DUKE OF BOURBON OBTAINS HER LIBERTY.—A TREATY ENTERED INTO BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND NAVARRE.

AT this time the duke of Anjou ſet out from Toulouſe, and marched in great array through the kingdom of France: he continued his route until he arrived in Paris, where he found the king and his other brothers the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who received him with infinite pleaſure.

The four brothers, during the time they were together in Paris, held many councils and conſultations on the ſtate of the kingdom, and in what manner they ſhould beſt act during the enſuing ſummer. It was determined to raiſe two large armies, and make an incurſion to Aquitaine. The duke of Anjou was to command one of theſe armies, which ſhould enter Guienne by la Réole and Bergerac: the duke of Berry the other towards Limoges and Quercy, when theſe two armies were to unite and march to Angoulême, to beſiege therein the prince of Wales. It was alſo propoſed and determined in theſe conſultations to recal that valiant knight ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, who had ſo gallantly and loyally fought for the crown of France, and entreat him to accept the charge of conſtable of France.

When king Charles, his brothers and his council, had completely arranged their future plans, and had enjoyed themſelves together for ſome time, the duke of Anjou, early in May, took his leave of them, to return the firſt to his government, for he had the longeſt journey to make. He was eſcorted by the barons and knights of France, being much beloved by them, and purſued his journey until he came to Montpellier, where he tarried upwards of a month and then returned to Toulouſe.

He directly collected as many men at arms as he was able, wherever he could hear of them, and ſoon had a large force from thoſe who had kept the field guarding the frontiers of the Engliſh in Rouergue

Rouergue and Quercy: for le petit Mechin, Naudon de Pans, Perrot de Savoye, le bourg Camus, Anthoine le Negre, Lanuit, Jaques de Bray and numbers of their companions had remained all the year at Cahors, where they had ravaged and ruined the country.

On the other hand, the duke of Berry went to Bourges in Berry, where he had iſſued a grand ſummons to all knights and ſquires of France, and Burgundy.

The duke of Bourbon had gone into his own country, where he had given orders concerning this intended expedition, and had collected a large body of knights and ſquires from the country of Forêts and the Bourbonois. His brother, count Peter d'Alençon made preparations in another part, and with good effect.

Sir Guy de Blois, at this period, was returned from Pruſſia, where he had been made a knight, and diſplayed his banner in an enterprize againſt the enemies of God. As ſoon as this gallant knight arrived in Hainault, and was informed of the expedition which his couſins of France were about to undertake in Aquitaine, he made immediate preparations for joining it; and, ſetting out from Hainault with all his array, he arrived at Paris to preſent himſelf to the king. He was gladly received by him, and ordered to join the duke of Berry with a command of knights, ſquires and men at arms in the expedition. Sir Guy de Blois, therefore, left the city of Paris, and rode to Orleans in his way to Berry.

In like manner as the king of France had arranged his armies, ſo did the king of England by two armies and two expeditions. It was ordered that the duke of Lancaſter ſhould march with four hundred men at arms and as many archers into Aquitaine, to reinforce his brothers; for it was thought that the greateſt force of the enemy would be ſent to that country. The king and his council determined that another army of men at arms and archers ſhould enter Picardy under ſir Robert Knolles, who was perfectly capable of ſuch a command, having learnt it under the moſt able maſters for a conſiderable time.

Sir Robert, at the requeſt of the king, willingly undertook this expedition: he promiſed to croſs the ſea to Calais, to paſs through the whole kingdom of France, and to fight with the French, if they were bold enough to meet him in the field. Of this he ſemed quite certain, and made wonderful preparations for himſelf, as well as for all thoſe who were to accompany him.

The mother of the duke of Bourbon about this time obtained her liberty, being exchanged for ſir Simon Burley, the prince of Wales's knight. Sir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt was very inſtrumental in bringing this buſineſs to an end, for which the duke of Bourbon and the queen of France teſtified their obligations to him.

There had been for a conſiderable time, long negociations carried on between the king of France and the king of Navarre, who reſided at Cherbourg. The miniſters of both kings managed the

the buſineſs in ſuch a manner that they informed the king of France he had not any reaſon for waging war againſt his brother-in-law the king of Navarre. They added, that for the preſent he had enough on his hands with his war with England, and that he had better leave things as they then were, leſt greater evils might ariſe; for, if the king of Navarre ſhould conſent to admit the Engliſh into his forts in Coutantin, they would harraſs the country of Normandy moſt grievouſly, which was a thing to be well conſidered and attended to.

Upon receiving this information and advice, the king of France conſented to a peace. He went to the town of Rouen, where all the treaties were drawn up and confirmed. The archbiſhop of Rouen, the count d'Alençon, the count de Sallebruche, ſir William des Dormans* and ſir Robert Lorris waited on the king of Navarre, whom they found at Vernon. He made for them grand dinners and magnificent feaſts; after which they conducted him to the king of France at Rouen, when theſe treaties and alliances were again read, ſworn to, confirmed and ſealed. It ſeems that the king of Navarre, by the articles of this peace was to renounce whatever engagements he may have entered into with the king of England, and that he himſelf, on his return to Navarre, was to declare war againſt him. For greater ſecurity of the affection between him and the king

* Sir William des Dormans—was chancellor of France.

of France, he was leave in his hands his two ſons, Charles and Peter, as hoſtages. Upon this treaty being concluded, the two kings left Rouen, and came to Paris, were there were again great feaſts. When they had ſufficiently enjoyed and amuſed themſelves, they took leave of each other. The king of Navarre quitted the king of France in the moſt amicable manner, leaving his two children with their uncle. He ſet out for Montpellier, and returned through that country to Foix, and from thence to his own kingdom of Navarre.

We will now return to what was paſſing in Aquitaine.

CHAP. XIV.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN LEAVES SPAIN AND ARRIVES AT TOULOUSE, WHERE THE DUKE OF ANJOU RECEIVES HIM WITH GREAT JOY.—THEY TAKE TOGETHER SEVERAL CASTLES FROM THE ENGLISH.

YOU know, as we have before mentioned it, that the duke of Anjou had been in France, and that, according to arrangements then made, upon his return to Languedoc, he was to invade, with his whole force, Guienne; for he never loved the prince of Wales nor the Engliſh, and indeed made no pretenſions to that effect. Before he left Paris, the king of France, by his deſire, had ſent letters

letters and ambaſſadors to the king of Caſtile, to requeſt he would ſend back ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, for by ſo doing, he would very much oblige him. At the ſame time, the king and duke of Anjou wrote moſt friendly letters to ſir Bertrand himſelf.

The envoys made haſte on their journey, and found king Henry with ſir Bertrand in the city of Léon in Spain, to whom they delivered their letters and the meſſage from the king of France.

The king of Spain never wiſhed to detain ſir Bertrand, nor would have forgiven himſelf for ſo doing. Sir Bertrand therefore made his preparations in haſte, and, taking leave of king Henry, ſet out with his attendants, and continued his road until he came to Toulouſe, where the duke of Anjou was. He had already there aſſembled a very large force of men at arms, knights and ſquires, and waited for nothing but the arrival of ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin; ſo that upon his coming the duke of Anjou and all the French were mightily rejoiced. Orders were given to march from Toulouſe, and invade the territories of the prince.

The duke of Lancaſter at this time was arrived at Southampton, with four hundred men at arms, and an equal number of archers. He embarked them and every neceſſary proviſion and ſtores on board ſhips, with the intent of ſailing for Bourdeaux, provided they might have a favourable wind.

With the duke, and under his command, were the lord Roos (of Hamlake), ſir Michael de la Pole,

Pole*, ſir Robert le Roux†, ſir John de St. Lo; and ſir William Beauchamp‡.

The duke of Anjou left the city of Toulouſe with a great and well ordered array. He was attended by the count d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albret, the count de Perigord, the count de Comminges, the viſcount de Carmaing, the count de Liſle, the viſcount de Bruniguel, the viſcount de Narbonne, the viſcount de Talar, the lord de la Barde, the lord de Pincornet, ſir Bertrand Tande, the ſénéſchal of Toulouſe, the ſénéſchal of Carcaſſonne, the ſénéſchal of Beaucaire and ſeveral others, amounting in the whole to upwards of two thouſand lances, knights and ſquires, and ſix thouſand footmen, armed with pikes and ſhields. Sir Bertrand du Gueſclin was appointed to the command of all this force.

They directed their march through the Agénois; and being joined by more than a thouſand combatants from the free companies, who had waited for them all the winter in Quercy, they made for Agen.

The firſt fort they came to was that of Moiſſac‖. The whole country was ſo frightened at the arrival of the duke of Anjou, and the large army he had brought, that they trembled before him, and

---

* Sir Michael de la Pole, afterwards earl of Suffolk, and favourite of Richard II.--See Dugdale.

† Sir Robert le Roux,—Barnes calls ſir Robert Ros.

‡ Sir William Beauchamp,—Lord Abergavenny.—DUGDALE.

‖ Moiſſac,—a town in Quercy, 12 leagues from Agen.

neither

neither towns nor caſtles had any inclination to hold out againſt him. When he arrived before Moiſſac, the inhabitants inſtantly ſurrendered and turned to the French. They then advanced to Agen, which followed this example. They afterwards marched towards Tonneins* on the Garonne; and the French went on unmoleſted, following the courſe of the river Garonne, in order to have plenty of forage: they came to port St. Marie†, which immediately ſurrendered. The French placed men at arms and garriſons in all theſe towns. The town and caſtle of Tonneins did the ſame, in which they placed a captain and twenty lances to guard it. They afterwards took the road to Montpezat‡ and Aiguillon‖, burning and deſtroying all the country.

When they came before Montpezat, which is a good town and has a ſtrong caſtle, thoſe within were ſo much frightened by the duke of Anjou that they directly opened their gates. The French then advanced to the ſtrong caſtle of Aiguillon, where they only remained four days; for then the garriſon ſurrendered to the duke, not being ſuch men as ſir Walter Manny commanded, when he defended it againſt John duke of Normandy, afterwards king of France. The inhabitants of Ber-

* Tonneins, a town of Agenois on the Garonne, 41 leagues from Toulouſe.

† Port St. Marie, on the Garonne, below Agen.

‡ Montpezat, a village in Guienne, near Tonneins.

‖ Aiguillon, a town of Guienne, one league from Tonneins.

gerac

gerac were very much aſtoniſhed at their having ſo done: for the governors, at this time, of Bergerac, were the captal de Buch and ſir Thomas Felton, who had with them one hundred lances, Engliſh and Gaſcons.

CHAP. XV.

THE DUKE OF BERRY INVADES LIMOUSIN.

JUST as the duke of Anjou and his army had invaded the territories of the prince by the way of Toulouſe and Agen, ſo did the duke of Berry with his army enter the Limouſin. He had full twelve hundred lances and three thouſand footmen, who conquered towns and caſtles, and burnt and deſtroyed the country they marched through.

With the duke of Berry were, the duke of Bourbon, the count de Alençon, ſir Guy de Blois, ſir Robert d'Alençon, count du Perche, ſir John d'Armagnac, ſir Hugh Dauphin, ſir John de Villemur, the lords de Beaujeu, de Villars, de Senac, ſir Geoffry de Montagu, ſir Louis de Maleval, ſir Raymond de Marneil, ſir John de Boulogne, his uncle ſir Geoffry de Boulogne, the viſcount d'Uzes, the lords de Sully, de Talenton, de Confant, Dappechere, Dacon, ſir John Damenue,

menue, Ymbaut de Peſchin, and many other good barons, knights and ſquires.

This army entered Limouſin, where they did infinite miſchief, and advanced to beſiege the city of Limoges. In this city were a body of Engliſh, whom ſir Hugh Calverley, the ſénéſchal of Limouſin had placed there; but he was not the maſter, for the biſhop of the city governed it, in whom the prince of Wales put much confidence, looking upon him as his ſteady friend.

The prince of Wales, who kept his court at Angoulême, had received information of theſe two grand expeditions of the dukes of Anjou and of Berry, and how they had invaded his principality at two different places. It was alſo told the prince, that as far as could be imagined, they were marching to form a junction near Angoulême, to beſiege him and the princeſs therein, and adviſed him to conſider of it.

The prince, who was valour itſelf, and full of reſources, replied, that 'his enemies ſhould never find him ſhut up in town or caſtle, and that he would immediately march and take the field againſt them.'

Clerks and knights were inſtantly employed to write and ſend off letters to loyal friends and ſubjects in Poitou, Saintonge, la Rochelle, Rouergue, Quercy, Gorre, Bigorre and Agenois, commanding them, with as many men as they could bring, to meet him at the town of Cognac. His rendezvous was fixed there; and he ſoon left Angoulême,

lême, attended by the princeſs and his young ſon Richard.

But during the time this ſummons was ſent, and every one making his preparations, the French kept advancing, burning and ravaging the country. They came before Linde, a good town ſituated upon the river Dordonne, one league from Bergerac: a valiant knight of Gaſcony, named ſir Thonius de Batefol *, was the governor of it.

The duke of Anjou, the count d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albret, the count de Perigord, the viſcount de Carmaing, and all the other barons with their men, came thither and formed the ſiege in a regular manner, ſaying they would not depart without having taken it.

This town was large, ſtrong and well provided with all ſorts of proviſion and artillery: for the captal de Buch and ſir Thomas Felton had been there a fortnight before, and had reinforced it. They thought that Linde was very capable of holding out, if thoſe within were determined, conſidering the aſſiſtance they might draw from Bergerac, ſhould there be occaſion. But the inhabitants were ſo wonderfully inclined to the French, that they entered into a negotiation with the duke of Anjou, and liſtened to his promiſes, which made them preſs the governor, ſir Thonius, that he alſo conſented to be a true Frenchman, upon

* Sir Thonius de Batefol. It is ſo in all my printed copies, but otherwiſe in the MSS. One has *Thomas*. Q. if it ſhould not be ſo.

conſideration

conſideration of receiving a large ſum of money, and having a good annuity from the duke for his life.

Every thing being thus ſettled, the town was to be delivered up to the French. This treaty was, however, known at Bergerac the evening preceding the day of ſurrender. The earl of Cambridge had juſt arrived there with two hundred lances, and was preſent when this information was given. The captal and ſir Thomas Felton were thunderſtruck at the intelligence, and ſaid they would be preſent at this ſurrender. Having ordered their troops, they ſet out from Bergerac after midnight, and rode towards the town of Linde. They came there by day-break, and, ordering one of the gates to be opened, puſhed forward without ſtopping until they arrived at the other gate, through which the French were to enter: indeed, they were already aſſembled there in crowds, for ſir Thonius was about to allow them to enter the gate. On ſeeing which, the captal, graſping his ſword, diſmounted, as did all his troops, and, advancing to ſir Thonius, ſaid: 'Sir Thonius, thou wicked traitor, thou ſhalt be the firſt dead man: and never more ſhalt thou commit another treaſon.' Upon which he thruſt his ſword into him, and with ſo much force that it went through his body and came out upwards of a foot on the other ſide, and ſtruck him down dead.

The

The French, on ſeeing the banners of the captal de Buch and ſir Thomas Felton, immediately retreated, having failed in their attempt.

Thus did the town continue Engliſh, but was in great danger of being burnt, and the inhabitants ſlain, becauſe they had conſented to this treaty. They excuſed themſelves wiſely and prudently, ſaying that what they had done and conſented to was through fear, and principally through their governour, who had brought this buſineſs about. The lords appeared to believe all this, and the inhabitants remained in peace: but the captal and ſir Thomas Felton continued in the town as long as the duke of Anjou lay before it, and until he had taken another road.

We will now ſpeak a little of the ſtate and condition of England, for that is now neceſſary, and of the invaſion of France by ſir Robert Knolles.

CHAP. VI.

A TRUCE IS ESTABLISHED BETWEEN ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.—SIR ROBERT KNOLLES OVERRUNS, BURNS AND RAVAGES THE WHOLE COUNTRIES OF PICARDY AND THE VERMANDOIS.

WHEN ſir Robert Knolles was about to leave England, there were many councils held between the Engliſh and Scots. They were ſo well

well conducted by the able miniſters of both kingdoms that a truce was eſtabliſhed between each king, kingdom, ſubjects, and adherents, for nine years.

The Scots, by this treaty, might arm and hire themſelves out like to others for ſubſidies, taking which ſide they pleaſed, either Engliſh or French: by which means ſir Robert increaſed his army with one hundred lances*.

When ſir Robert and all who were to accompany him were ready, and had arrived at Dover, they paſſed the ſea, he himſelf croſſing the laſt, and landed at Calais, where, on his diſembarking, he was received with great joy by the governor, ſir Nicholas Stambourn, and his brother ſoldiers.

When they had refreſhed themſelves for ſeven days, and had formed their plans with reſpect to the parts of France into which they ſhould carry their attack, they ordered their baggage and ſtores to advance, and took the field in a very handſome manner. They were about fifteen hundred lances and four thouſand archers, including the Welſhmen. Sir Robert was accompanied, according to

* Mezeray ſays, this truce was for three years—Buchanan, fourteen,—Froiſſart, nine.—*Note in Barnes, p.* 800.

I cannot find this truce in the Fœdera. On the contrary, there is an offenſive and defenſive treaty with the king of France, dated at Edinburgh caſtle, 28th October, 1371, in which it expreſsly mentions that no truce is to be entered into, without including both France and Scotland, by either of the parties.—For more particulars, ſee Rymer.

the king's orders, by ſir Thomas Grantſon *, ſir Aleyne Boxhull, ſir Gilbert Gifford, the lord de Salvatier †, ſir John Bourchier ‡, ſir William de Merville §, ſir Geoffry Urſwell ‖, and many other knights and ſquires, expert and able men at arms, who marched this firſt day pretty near to Fiennes ¶.

Sir Moreau de Fiennes, who at that time was conſtable of France, reſided in his caſtle with a great number of men at arms, knights and ſquires, all prepared and ready to receive the Engliſh. On the morrow, when they advanced towards the caſtle and drew up to the attack, they found they ſhould not gain any thing, ſo they marched off through the county of Guines, and entered that of Faukenbourg, burning every thing on their road, and came before the city of Terouenne, but did not attack it: for it was ſo well garriſoned with

---

* Sir Thomas Grantſon,—82d knight of the Garter.—See Grandiſon in Dugdale.

† 'Le ſire de Salvatier.' Q.

‡ Sir John Bourchier,—86th knight of the Garter—a baron.—See Dugdale.

§ De Merville. Q. if not Neville: I believe it to be ſir William Neville, one of the ſons of Ralph lord Neville, of Raby.—See Dugdale.

Barnes names ſir *Hugh* Meinel, ſir Walter Fitzwalter, and ſir John Menſtreworth.

‖ I have called this perſon *Urſwell*, after Barnes; but, as Froiſſart writes it *Ourcelay*, it is probably one of the Worſley family. It may alſo be ſir Hugh Wrotteſley, ſpelled *Wortſeyley* in Mills, who was 19th knight of the Garter, and perhaps with more probability.

¶ Fiennes,—a village in the Boulonnois generality of Amiens.

men

men at arms that it would have been only loſt trouble. They continued their march through the country of the Terouennois, to enter Artois; and, as they only advanced three or four leagues a day on account of their baggage and infantry, they took up their quarters in the large villages at the early hour of mid-day or noon. Thus did they advance with their whole army until they came before the city of Arras. The lords and principal captains were lodged in the town of Mount St. Eloy, near Arras, and their army in the environs; whence they pillaged and ravaged all the country round, as far as they dared to extend themſelves.

The king of France had at this ſeaſon ordered a number of men at arms to the different cities, fortreſſes, large towns, caſtles, bridges, and fords, to guard and defend thoſe which ſhould be attacked, and which they were not to quit on any account.

When ſir Robert Knolles had refreſhed himſelf and army for two days, he quitted St. Eloy, and marched from before Arras in good array. Sir William de Merville and ſir Geoffry Urſwell, who were the marſhals of the army, could not reſiſt a wiſh to ſee thoſe of Arras a little nearer. They quitted, therefore, the battalion, and advanced with about two hundred lances and four hundred archers, as far as the barriers of the ſuburbs of Arras, which they found well guarded by men at arms and croſs-bows. The lord Charles de Poitiers was at that time in the town with madame

d' Artois, but he made not any attempt to ſally out on the Engliſh or otherwiſe attack them.

The Engliſh, having finiſhed their courſe, had halted a ſhort time at the barriers; and, ſeeing no appearance of any one coming to them, they ſet out on their return to the main army, who were waiting for them drawn up in a line of battle. However, before they departed, they wiſhed to leave a remembrance behind, and ſet fire to the ſuburbs of Arras, in order to entice the inhabitants out of the town, who had not any good will to do ſo. This fire did much miſchief, for it burnt a large monaſtery of preaching friars, cloiſters and all that was without the town.

After this, the Engliſh continued their march, taking the road to Bapaume*, burning and ravaging the whole country. The army was conſtantly in motion, and having entered the Vermandois, arrived at Roye†; which town they burnt, and then marched towards Ham‡ in Vermandois. All the inhabitants of the flat country had retired into this town, and into St. Quentin and Peronne, carrying with them every thing portable. The Engliſh found nothing but barns full of unthreſhed corn, for it was now after Auguſt.

They advanced by eaſy marches, without any labour or fatigue, until they came to a rich coun-

* Bapaume,—a ſtrong town of Artois, ſix leagues from Arras.

† Roye,—a ſtrong town in Picardy, eighteen leagues from Arras.

‡ Ham,—a town in Picardy, on the Somme, ſix leagues from Roye.

try,

try, where they halted for two or three days. During this time, ſir Robert Knolles ſent parties to a town or caſtle which commanded the ſurrounding country, and the marſhals, having obtained a parley with the governors, aſked, 'How much will you give us in ready money for all this country, if we will not deſpoil it?' A treaty and compoſition was entered into with ſir Robert, and a large ſum of florins paid down. This country was reſpited from being burnt. Sir Robert gained by this treaty a ſum amounting to one hundred thouſand francs, for which he was afterwards ill at court, and accuſed to the king of England for not having done his duty faithfully, as I ſhall fully relate in the continuance of this hiſtory.

The lands of the lord de Coucy were unmoleſted; and never did the Engliſh hurt man or woman, nor take from them a farthing, who ſaid, 'I belong to the lord de Coucy.' They marched unto the good town of Noyon*, which was well provided with men at arms, and halted in the neighbourhood: they made their approaches very near, to ſee if it were poſſible for them to carry it by aſſault, but found it well fortified, and able to defend itſelf ſhould there be occaſion. Sir Robert was lodged in the abbey of Orcamp†, and his men in the neighbourhood. They advanced one day in order of battle to the walls of the city,

* Noyon,—now a village in Picardy, dioceſe of Amiens.

† Orcamp, or St. Anne,—a village in Picardy, near Noyon.

to ſee if the garriſon and inhabitants would iſſue forth, but in vain.

There was a Scots knight in the Engliſh army who performed a moſt gallant deed of arms. He quitted his troop, with his lance in its reſt, and mounted on his courſer, followed only by his page; when, ſticking ſpurs into his horſe, he was ſoon up the mountain and at the barriers. The name of this knight was ſir John Aſſueton*, a very valiant and able man, perfectly maſter of his profeſſion. When he was arrived at the barriers of Noyon, he diſmounted, and, giving his horſe to his page, ſaid, 'Quit not this place:' then, graſping his ſpear, he advanced to the barriers, and leaped over them. There were on the inſide ſome good knights of that country, ſuch as ſir John de Roye, ſir Launcelot de Lorris, and ten or twelve others, who were aſtoniſhed at this action, and wondered what he would do next: however, they received him well. The Scots knight, addreſſing them, ſaid; 'Gentlemen, I am come to ſee you; for, as you do not vouchſafe to come out beyond your barriers, I condeſcend to viſit you. I wiſh to try my knighthood againſt yours, and you will conquer me if you can.' After this, he gave many grand ſtrokes with his lance, which they returned him. He continued in this ſituation alone againſt them all, ſkirmiſhing and fighting moſt gallantly, upwards of an hour. He wounded one or two of their knights; and

* Sir John Aſſueton. Probably Seton.

they

they had ſo much pleaſure in this combat, they frequently forgot themſelves. The inhabitants looked from above the gate and tops of the walls with wonder. They might have done him much hurt with their arrows, if they had ſo willed: but no: the French knights had ſtrictly forbidden it. Whilſt he was thus engaged, his page came cloſe to the barriers, mounted on his courſer, and ſaid to him aloud, in his own language, 'My lord, you had better come away: it is time, for our army is on its march.' The knight, who had heard him, made ready to follow his advice; and, after he had given two or three thruſts to clear his way, he ſeized his ſpear, and leaped again over the barriers without any hurt, and, armed as he was, jumped up behind the page on his courſer. When he was thus mounted, he ſaid to the French, 'Adieu, gentlemen: many thanks to you,' and ſpurring his ſteed, ſoon rejoined his companions. This gallant feat of ſir John Aſſueton was highly prized by all manner of perſons.

CHAP. XVII.

THE GARRISON OF NOYON MAKE THE ENGLISH PRISONERS WHO HAD SET FIRE TO PONT L'EVEQUE.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS FOR SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN.

SIR Robert Knolles and his army, on their departure from the town of Noyon, ſet fire to Pont l'Evêque on the river Oiſe, where there were ſeveral handſome hôtels. Thoſe knights and ſquires in the town of Noyon were exceedingly angry at this proceeding, and, underſtanding that ſir Robert and his forces had proceeded, left the city of Noyon with about fifty lances, and came ſo well in time to the town of Pont l'Evêque, that they found there thoſe who had burnt it, and others occupied in the pillage. They were attacked moſt furiouſly, and the greater part of them ſlain or made priſoners. The French took more than ſixty horſes, and reſcued many priſoners whom the enemy intended carrying off. Several good houſes would have been burnt if they had not come there ſo opportunely. They returned to Noyon with upwards of fifteen Engliſh priſoners, whom they beheaded.

The Engliſh continued their march in battle array, intending to enter the Laonnois, and to croſs

croſs the river Oiſe * and Aine †. They committed no devaſtation in the county of Soiſſons, becauſe it belonged to the lord de Coucy. True it is, they were followed and watched by ſome lords of France, ſuch as the viſcount de Meaux, the lord de Chauny, lord Raoul de Coucy, lord William de Melun, ſon of the count de Tancarville, and their forces; ſo that the Engliſh, not daring to quit their line of march, kept in a compact body. The French did not attack them, but every night took up their quarters in caſtles or ſtrong towns; whilſt the Engliſh encamped in the open plains, where they found proviſion in plenty and new wine, with which they made very free. Thus did they advance, burning, ravaging, and oppreſſing all the country, when they croſſed the river Marne‡, and entered Champagne, and then paſſed the Aube§, returning to the country about Provins‖: when they ſeveral times paſſed the Seine, and made appearances of marching towards Paris; for they had heard that the king of France had collected a large force of men at arms under the command of the count de St. Pol and the lord de Cliſſon, with whom they were very

* Oiſe,—a river in Picardy,—riſes in Hainault.

† Aiſne or Aine,—a river which riſes in Champagne, and joins the Oiſe a little above Compiegne.

‡ Marne,—a large river which riſes near Baſſiny.

§ Aube,—a conſiderable river in Champagne. It riſes at Auberive, near Langres.

‖ Provins,—an ancient town of Brie, on the Morin, which runs into the Marne 22 leagues from Paris.

eager

eager to engage, and for that end made every preparation as if they only wiſhed for the combat.

Upon this, the king of France wrote to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, who was in Aquitaine with the duke of Anjou, to order him, as ſoon as he ſhould have read the letters, to ſet out for France, as he intended to employ him in another part of his kingdom.

Pope Urban V. came back about this time to Avignon, after having reſided nearly four years at Rome. He returned in the hope of making peace between the two kings: for this renewal of war was very diſpleaſing to him. All thoſe of Avignon and the country around it were very happy at the return of the pope, as they thought it would be more advantageous for them.

We will now ſay how the prince of Wales carried on his affairs.

CHAP. XVIII.

THE PRINCE OF WALES ASSEMBLES HIS ARMY AT COGNAC, WHERE HE MEETS HIS BROTHER THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—THE DUKES OF ANJOU AND BERRY BREAK UP THEIR EXPEDITION, LIMOGES HAVING TURNED TO THE FRENCH.

YOU have before heard of the prince of Wales fixing his rendezvous at Cognac, with the intent of advancing to combat the duke of Anjou,

Anjou, who was burning and deſpoiling his territories. The barons, knights and ſquires of Poitou and Saintonge, and all who were vaſſals to the prince haſtened to obey his ſummons. The earl of Pembroke quitted his garriſon, with a hundred lances, and came to meet him.

The duke of Lancaſter and his army arrived about this time at Bourdeaux, at which the country rejoiced much. He made not any long ſtay there; for, hearing that the prince was about to march againſt his enemies, he departed, and met, one day's march from Cognac, the earl of Pembroke, who was likewiſe going thither. They were very happy to ſee each other, and rode together to Cognac, where they found the prince, princeſs and earl of Cambridge, who were greatly pleaſed at their arrival. Men at arms daily came in from Poitou, Saintonge, la Rochelle, Bigorre, Gorre, Gaſcony, and the ſurrounding countries, under the obedience of the prince.

The duke of Anjou, the couut d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albert, and the counts, viſcounts, knights and ſquires of that army, who, as before has been related, conquered cities, towns and fortreſſes to the number of more than forty, by merely ſhewing themſelves before them, and who had advanced within fifteen leagues of Bourdeaux, burning and ravaging the country round Bergerac and Linde, hearing that the prince had ſummoned his forces to meet him at Cognac, and that the duke of Lancaſter was arrived with a ſtrong body of men at arms and archers

archers from England, called a council to conſider what meaſures would be now moſt proper for them to purſue. It was at this time that the king of France had ſent back ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin to the duke of Berry, who was beſieging the city of Limoges, and had preſſed it ſo hard that it was upon the point of ſurrendering, but upon good terms. Sir Bertrand was ſummoned to attend this council of the duke of Anjou, as was right, and many were the debates at it. At laſt, after well conſidering the buſineſs, the duke of Anjou was adviſed, for the preſent, to break up this expedition, to order his men to different garriſons, and to carry on the war from thence, as he had done ſufficient in the open field. It was therefore highly behoving the lords of Gaſcony who were preſent, ſuch as the Count d'Armagnac, the count de Perigord, the lord d'Albert and others, to retire to their own country to guard and defend it; for they knew not what the prince might be inclined to do with ſo large an army. They then ſeparated, each going on his own buſineſs. The duke of Anjou returned to the city of Cahors: his men and the free companies ſpread themſelves over the country which they had conquered, and quartered themſelves in different garriſons. The count d'Armagnac and the other lords went to their homes, and amply ſtored their towns and caſtles with all ſorts of proviſion and artillery, as if they expected a war: they ordered out their vaſſals, and trained them to defend their country ſhould need be.

We

We will now ſpeak of ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, who, on his departure from the duke of Anjou, marched with his men to the ſiege of Limoges, where the duke of Berry, the duke of Bourbon and the great knights of France were employed. The French were in high ſpirits on the arrival of ſir Bertrand, and it was a grand piece of news both within as well as without the city. He immediately followed up ſome treaties which had been before opened between the biſhop and citizens with the duke of Berry, and managed that they were concluded by the biſhop and citizens turning to the French. The dukes of Berry and Bourbon, ſir Guy de Blois and the lords of France entered the town with great ſtate, when they received from the inhabitants their homage and fealty. After they had reſted themſelves for three days, they followed the ſame reſolutions as had been determined upon in the council held by the duke of Anjou, and each man retired to his own country to guard his towns and caſtles againſt ſir Robert Knolles, who ſtill kept his ground in France, and alſo becauſe they had done enough by taking ſuch a city as Limoges. The lords then ſeparated, but ſir Bertrand remained in Limouſin with two hundred lances, which he poſted in the caſtles of the lord de Maleval, who had turned to the French.

When the duke of Berry left Limoges, he ordered into the city, at the requeſt of the biſhop, ſir John de Villemur, ſir Hugh de la Roche and Roger de Beaufort, with one hundred men at arms.

arms. He then retreated to Berry, and the duke of Bourbon to the Bourbonois. The other lords who had come from diſtant parts went to their different countries.

We will now return to the prince.

CHAP. XIX.

THE PRINCE OF WALES, ANXIOUS TO RECOVER LIMOGES, LAYS SIEGE TO IT, AND UNDERMINES IT.

WHEN intelligence was brought to the prince that the city of Limoges had become French, that the biſhop, who had been his companion and one in whom he uſed to place great confidence, was a party to all the treaties, and had been much aiding and aſſiſting in the ſurrender, he was in a violent paſſion, and held the biſhop and all other churchmen in very low eſtimation, in whom formerly he had put great truſt. He ſwore by the ſoul of his father, which he had never perjured, that he would have it back again, that he would not attend to any thing before he had done this, and that he would make the inhabitants pay dearly for their treachery.

When the greater part of his forces were arrived, he muſtered them: they amounted to twelve hundred lances, knights and ſquires, a thouſand archers

archers and a thouſand footmen. They marched from the town of Cognac. Sir Thomas Felton and the captal de Buch remained at Bergerac, to guard that frontier againſt the French and the free companies who were diſperſed over that part of the country.

With the prince were, his brothers of Lancaſter and Cambridge, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Louis de Harcourt, the lords de Pons, de Partenay, de Pinane, de Tannaybouton, ſir Percival de Coulonge, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, Poitevins: of Gaſcons there were, the lords de Montferrant, de Chaumont, de Longueren, ſir Aimery de Tharſe, the lords de Pommiers, de Muciden, de l'Eſparre, the ſouldich de la Trane*, the lord de Gironde and ſeveral more: of Engliſh there were, lord Thomas Percy, the lord Roos, ſir William Beauchamp, ſir Michael de la Pole, ſir Stephen Coſſington, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir Baldwin de Franville, ſir Simon Burley, the earl of Angus, ſir John Devereux, ſir William Neville, and more whom I cannot name: of Hainaulters, were ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt: of the free companies, ſir Perducas d'Albret, Naudon de Bagerant, Lanuit, the bourg de l'Eſparre, the bourg de Breteuil, Eſpiote, Bernard de Wiſt, and others.

All theſe men at arms were drawn out in battle array, and took the field, when the whole coun-

* The ſouldich de la Trane. See Aſhmole, vol. ii. where there is a long account of him, and mention alſo is made of the lords de Montferrant and de l'Eſparre.

try

try began to tremble for the conſequences. At that time the prince of Wales was not able to mount his horſe, but was, for his greater eaſe, carried in a litter. They followed the road to Limouſin, in order to get to Limoges, where in due time they arrived and encamped all round it. The prince ſwore he would never leave the place until he had regained it.

The biſhop of the place and the inhabitants found they had acted too wickedly, and had greatly incenſed the prince; for which they were very repentant, but that was now of no avail, as they were not the maſters of the town. Sir John de Villemur, ſir Hugh de la Roche and Roger de Beaufort, who commanded in it, did all they could to comfort them by ſaying, 'Gentlemen, do not be alarmed: we are ſufficiently ſtrong to hold out againſt the army of the prince: he cannot take us by aſſault, nor greatly hurt us, for we are well ſupplied with artillery.'

When the prince and his marſhals had well conſidered the ſtrength and force of Limoges, and knew the number of gentlemen that were in it, they agreed they could never take it by aſſault, but ſaid they would attempt it by another manner.

The prince was always accuſtomed to carry with him, in his expeditions, a large body of miners: theſe were immediately ſet to work, and made great progreſs. The knights who were in the town ſoon perceived they were undermining them, and on that account began to counter-

countermine to prevent the effect. But we will now leave the prince a little, to return to ſir Robert Knolles.

CHAP. XX.

SIR ROBERT KNOLLES, IN CONTINUING HIS INCURSIONS THROUGH DIFFERENT PROVINCES OF FRANCE, ADVANCES NEAR TO PARIS.—A KNIGHT OF HIS ARMY, IN RETURNING FROM A VAINGLORIOUS EXPEDITION, IS SLAIN BY A BUTCHER OF PARIS.

SIR Robert Knolles, as has been before related, had entered France with a large body of men, and was marching by ſhort ſtages through that kingdom with a magnificence for which the people and the rich provinces paid dearly. The Engliſh, as they advanced and retreated, did infinite miſchief, at the ſame time ſhewing as if they only wiſhed for a battle.

Having paſſed through the countries of Artois, Vermandois, the biſhoprick of Laon, the archbiſhoprick of Rheims in Champagne, they re-returned into Brie, and from thence came near to Paris, and quartered themſelves for a day and two nights in the villages around it.

King Charles of France was at that time in the city, and he could ſee from his palace of St. Pol

the fire and ſmoke which the enemy were making in the Gâtinois. There were alſo in the city the conſtable of France ſir Moreau de Fiennes, the count de St. Pol, the count de Tancarville, the count de Saltzburg, the viſcount Meaux, ſir Raoul de Coucy, the ſénéſchal of Hainault, ſir Odoart de Renti, ſir Enguerrand d'Audin, the lord de Château-julien, ſir John de Vienne, the lord de la Riviere, and many more great knights and valorous men of France: but not one of them ſallied forth, for the king had ſtrictly forbidden them ſo to do. The lord de Cliſſon, who was of the king's cabinet council, and more liſtened to than the reſt, ſaid every thing he could to prevent any knight from quitting the town, adding, among other things, 'Sire, why ſhould you employ your men againſt theſe madmen? Let them go about their buſineſs. They cannot take your inheritance from you, nor drive you out of it by ſmoke.'

The count de St. Pol, the viſcount de Rohan, ſir Raoul de Coucy, the lords de Canin, de Creſquos, ſir Odoart de Renti and ſir Enguerrand d'Audin, were at the barriers of St. James's gate. Now it happened one Tueſday morning, when the Engliſh began to decamp, and had ſet fire to all the villages wherein they were lodged, ſo that the fires were diſtinctly ſeen from Paris, a knight of their army, who had made a vow the preceding day that he would advance as far as the barriers and ſtrike them with his lance, did not break his oath, but ſet off with his lance in his hand, his target on his neck, and completely armed except his

his helmet, and, ſpurring his ſteed, was followed by his ſquire on another courſer carrying the helmet. When he approached Paris, he put on the helmet, which his ſquire laced behind. He then galloped away, ſticking ſpurs into his horſe, and advanced prancing to ſtrike the barriers. They were then open; and the lords and barons within imagined he intended to enter the town, but he did not mean any ſuch thing, for, having ſtruck the gates according to his vow, he checked his horſe and turned about. The French knights who ſaw him thus retreat cried out to him, 'Get away! get away! thou haſt well acquitted thyſelf.' As for the name of this knight, I am ignorant of it, nor do I know from what country he came; but he bore for his arms gules à deux fouſſes noir, with une bordure noire non endentée.

However, an adventure befel him, from which he had not ſo fortunate an eſcape. On his return, he met a butcher on the pavement in the ſuburbs, a very ſtrong man, who had noticed him as he had paſſed him, and who had in his hand a very ſharp and heavy hatchet with a long handle. As the knight was returning alone, and in a careleſs manner, the valiant butcher came on one ſide of him, and gave him ſuch a blow between the ſhoulders that he fell on his horſe's neck: he recovered himſelf, but the butcher repeated the blow on his head ſo that the axe entered it. The knight, through exceſs of pain, fell to the earth; and the horſe galloped away to the ſquire, who was waiting for his maſter in the fields at the ex-

remity of the ſuburbs. The ſquire caught the courſer, but wondered what was become of his maſter; for he had ſeen him gallop to the barriers, ſtrike them, and then turn about to come back. He therefore ſet out to look for him; but he had not gone many paces before he ſaw him in the hands of four fellows, who were beating him as if they were hammering on an anvil: this ſo much frightened the ſquire that he dared not advance further, for he ſaw he could not give him any effectual aſſiſtance: he therefore returned as ſpeedily as he could.

Thus was this knight ſlain: and thoſe lords who were poſted at the barriers had him buried in holy ground. The ſquire returned to the army, and related the misfortune which had befallen his maſter. All his brother-warriors were greatly angered thereat; and they marched to take up their quarters for the night, between Montlehery * and Paris, upon a ſmall river, where they encamped at an early hour in the day.

* Montlehery,—a town in the iſle of France, ſeven leagues from Paris.

CHAP. XXI.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN TAKES THE FORTRESS OF ST. YRIER IN LIMOUSIN.—THE PRINCE OF WALES RE-CONQUERS LIMOGES.

DURING the time ſir Robert Knolles was employed in his expedition, and the prince of Wales with his two brothers were at the ſiege of Limoges, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin with his company, amounting to about two hundred lances, marched through a part of Limouſin, but did not encamp in the open plain for fear of the Engliſh. He retreated every night into ſome of the ſtrong places which had lately turned to the French: in that number were the caſtles of ſir Louis de Maleval and ſir Raymond de Marneil, and ſeveral others: from thence he made daily excurſions to conquer other towns and caſtles.

The prince knew well all this; for he received every day information of what was paſſing, as well as complaints on the ſubject; but he would not break up his ſiege, for he had too much at heart the loſs of Limoges.

Sir Bertrand entered the viſcounty of Limoges, a territory which was dependant on lord John de Montfort, duke of Brittany, in the name of the widow of lord Charles de Blois, to whom it had formerly belonged. He made war upon it without any oppoſition; for the duke of Brittany did

37377

not imagine Sir Bertrand would carry the war into any part of his property. He came before St. Yrier *, where there were not any gentlemen that knew how to defend it; and the inhabitants were ſo frightened, they ſurrendered themſelves under the obedience of the ducheſs dowager of Brittany, in whoſe name the war was made. The Bretons formed St. Yrier into a conſiderable garriſon; by which means they took many other towns in Limouſin. But let us return to the prince.

The prince of Wales remained about a month, and not more, before the city of Limoges: he would not allow of any aſſaults or ſkirmiſhing, but kept his miners ſteadily at work. The knights in the town perceived what they were about, and made countermines to deſtroy them; but they failed in their attempt. When the miners of the prince (who, as they found themſelves countermined, kept changing the line of direction of their own mine) had finiſhed their buſineſs, they came to the prince, and ſaid; 'My lord, we are ready, and will throw down, whenever you pleaſe, a very large part of the wall into the ditch, through the breach of which you may enter the town at your eaſe and without danger.'

This news was very agreeable to the prince, who replied, 'I wiſh then that yould prove your words to-morrow morning at ſix o'clock.' The miners ſet fire to the combuſtibles in the mine; and on the morrow morning, as they had foretold

* St. Yrier,—a village in Limouſin, election of Tulles.

the

the prince, they flung down a great piece of wall, which filled the ditches.

The Engliſh ſaw this with pleaſure, for they were all armed and prepared to enter the town. Thoſe on foot did ſo, and ran to the gate, which they deſtroyed as well as the barriers, for there were no other defences; and all this was done ſo ſuddenly that the inhabitants had not time to prevent it.

The prince, the duke of Lancaſter, the earls of Cambridge and of Pembroke, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle and the others, with their men, ruſhed into the town. You would then have ſeen pillagers, active to do miſchief, running through the town, ſlaying men, women and children, according to their orders. It was a moſt melancholy buſineſs; for all ranks, ages and ſexes caſt themſelves on their knees before the prince, begging for mercy; but he was ſo inflamed with paſſion and revenge that he liſtened to none, but all were put to the ſword, wherever they could be found, even thoſe who were not guilty: for I know not why the poor were not ſpared, who could not have had any part in this treaſon; but they ſuffered for it, and indeed more than thoſe who had been the leaders of the treachery.

There was not that day in the city of Limoges any heart ſo hardened, or that had any ſenſe of religion, who did not deeply bewail the unfortunate events paſſing before their eyes; for upwards of three thouſand men, women and children were

to death that day. God have mercy on their ſouls! for they were veritable martyrs.

A company of Engliſh, in entering the town, haſtened to the palace of the biſhop, whom they there found and took priſoner, carrying him, without any regard to his dignity, to the prince of Wales, who, eyeing him indignantly, told him that his head ſhould be cut off, and ordered him out of his preſence.

We will now ſpeak of thoſe knights who were in the town, ſir John de Villemur, ſir Hugh de la Roche, and Roger de Beaufort, ſon to the count de Beaufort, governors of the city. When they perceived the tribulation which was overpowering them, they ſaid; 'We ſhall all be ſlain for a certainty, if we do not gallantly defend ourſelves: let us therefore ſell our lives as dearly as good knights ought to do.' Upon this, ſir John de Villemur ſaid to Roger de Beaufort, 'You muſt be knighted.' Roger replied, 'Sir, I have not as yet ſignalized myſelf ſufficiently for that honour, but I thank you much for your good opinion in ſuggeſting it to me.' No more was ſaid, for they had not time to hold further converſation.

They collected in a body, and, placing themſelves before an old wall, ſir John de Villemur and ſir Hugh de la Roche diſplayed their banners, and drew up in good order. They might be, in the whole, about fourſcore.

The duke of Lancaſter and the earl of Cambridge, with their men, advanced upon them, and diſmounted, to be on an equality with the enemy.

They

They attacked them with hearty good will. You may eaſily imagine that this handful of men could not reſiſt the Engliſh, but were all ſlain or made priſoners.

The duke of Lancaſter was engaged for a long time with ſir John de Villemur, who was a hardy knight, ſtrong and well made. The earl of Cambridge ſingled out ſir Hugh de la Roche, and the earl of Pembroke Roger de Beaufort, who was but a ſimple eſquire. Theſe three Frenchmen did many valorous deeds of arms, as all allowed, and ill did it betide thoſe who approached too near. The prince, coming that way in his carriage, looked on the combat with great pleaſure, and enjoyed it ſo much that his heart was ſoftened and his anger appeaſed. After the combat had laſted a conſiderable time, the Frenchmen, with one accord, viewing their ſwords, ſaid, 'My lords, we are yours: you have vanquiſhed us: therefore act according to the law of arms.' 'By God,' replied the duke of Lancaſter, 'ſir John, we do not intend otherwiſe, and we accept you for our priſoners.' Thus, as I have been informed, were theſe three knights taken. But the buſineſs was not here ended, for the whole town was pillaged, burnt, and totally deſtroyed. The Engliſh then departed, carrying with them their booty and priſoners. They marched to Cognac, where the princeſs had remained, and there the prince diſbanded his forces, not intending to do any thing more that ſeaſon; for he did not feel himſelf at his eaſe, as every exertion aggravated his diſorder, which

which was increaſing, to the great diſmay of his brothers and all thoſe about him.

I muſt inform you how the biſhop of Limoges eſcaped with impriſonment; who had been in imminent danger of his life. The duke of Lancaſter aſked him of the prince, who conſented, and ordered him to be given up to the duke, for him to do with him according as he willed. The biſhop having good friends, they ſent information of his ſituation to the pope, who had lately arrived at Avignon; and fortunate was it for the biſhop they did ſo, otherwiſe he would have been a dead man. The pope wrote ſuch preſſing and kind letters to the duke of Lancaſter, to requeſt he would give him the biſhop, that he was unwilling to refuſe, and ſent him to the pope, who felt himſelf exceedingly obliged for it.

We will now ſay what was going forward in France.

CHAP. XXII.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN IS MADE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.

THE king of France was informed of the conqueſt and deſtruction of Limoges, and how the prince and his army had left it empty and deſerted, which vexed him much on account of the

the diſtreſs and loſs of the late inhabitants. It was therefore thought adviſable in a council of nobles and prelates, as well as by the common aſſent of the whole kingdom, to elect a chief or commander, called a conſtable (for ſir Moreau de Fiennes wiſhed to reſign the office) who was a valiant and enterpriſing man, and one to whom all knights and ſquires would pay proper deference. After all things had been well conſidered, they unanimouſly elected ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin (provided he would undertake the office,) as the moſt valiant, the beſt informed, the moſt virtuous and fortunate in conducting affairs for the crown of France of all thoſe who were bearing arms in its defence.

The king wrote to him by meſſengers, for him to come to Paris. Thoſe ſent found him in the viſcounty of Limoges, taking caſtles and forts, which he put under the obedience of madame de Bretagne, widow of the late lord Charles de Blois. He had lately taken a town called Brantome*, whoſe inhabitants had ſurrendered themſelves to him, and was then on an expedition againſt another.

When the king's meſſengers came to him, he received them handſomely, as he knew well how to do. They gave him their letter, and delivered their meſſage word for word. When ſir Bertrand thus ſaw himſelf ſpecially ordered, he was unwilling to make any more excuſes for not

* Brantome,—a town in Perigord, dioceſe of Perigueux.

waiting

waiting on the king of France to know his will: he ſet out as ſoon as poſſible, having ordered all his men into the garriſons which he had conquered, and appointed his nephew, ſir Oliver de Mauny, commander over them.

He rode on to Paris, where he found the king ſurrounded by a number of the lords of his council. He was received by all with great pleaſure; and the king told him of his being choſen conſtable of France. On hearing which, ſir Bertrand modeſtly and ſagely excuſed himſelf, ſaying, 'he was not worthy of it: that he was but a poor knight and ſimple batchelor, in compariſon with the great lords and valorous men of France, however fortune might have been favourable to him.' The king replied, 'that his excuſes would be of no avail; that he muſt conſent to accept this dignity, for it had been ſo determined by the deciſion of the whole of the council of France, and that he would not break through ſuch a reſolution.' Sir Bertrand uſed other arguments to excuſe himſelf; adding 'Dear lord and noble king, I cannot, I dare not, whatever I may wiſh, oppoſe what may be your good pleaſure: but in truth I am too poor a man, and of low extraction, for the office of conſtable, which is ſo grand and noble that it is proper for thoſe (who wiſh to excerciſe it juſtly and honourably) to command and keep a ſtrict eye more upon the great than the poor. Now Sir, here are my lords your brothers, your nephews and your couſins, who will have different commands in your armies, and in various expeditions; and how ſhall

I dare

I dare to order them? Certainly, my dear lord, envy and jealouſy are ſo much abroad, I ought to be on my guard againſt them: I therefore entreat you will not inſiſt on my taking this office, but give it to ſome other who will readily accept it, and who knows better than I do how to execute it.' The king made anſwer; 'Sir Bertrand, that excuſe will not ſerve you; for I have neither brother, nephew, couſin, count or baron in my realm but who will obey your orders; and ſhould any one act otherwiſe, he would ſo anger me that he ſhould ſoon feel the effects of it: I therefore beg of you to accept this office with a good will.'

Sir Bertrand, finding that no excuſe nor any thing he could ſay would be liſtened to, accepted the king's offer, but it was much againſt his inclination. He was inveſted with the office of conſtable; and the king, to ſhew him greater affection, made him be ſeated at his table, and gave him, beſides this office, many rich gifts and large domains in land, for him and his heirs. The duke of Anjou was very active in forwarding this promotion.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN AND THE LORD DE CLISSON DEFEAT THE FORCES OF SIR ROBERT KNOLLES AT PONT-VALIN*.

SOON after ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin had been inveſted with the dignity of conſtable, he told the king he wiſhed to form an expedition againſt ſir Robert Knolles and his forces, who were at that time on the borders of Maine and Anjou. This was very agreeable to the king, who ſaid to him, 'Take any number of men at arms you pleaſe, and whatever elſe you may think right.'

The conſtable made every neceſſary preparation, and collected a large body of men at arms, Bretons and others, and marched towards Maine, taking with him the lord de Cliſſon. The conſtable came to the city of Mans, where he fixed his head-quarters, and the lord de Cliſſon in another town hard by: they might be about five hundred lances.

Sir Robert Knolles and his army were ſtill in that part of the country, but they did not agree very well together; for there was an Engliſh knight among them, called ſir John Menſtre-

* Pont-Valin,—a town in Anjou, election of la Flêche.

worth,

worth*, who always objected to what others propoſed, and ſaid they only waſted their time in theſe expeditions, and wore down and fatigued the men without doing any thing eſſential, or making any conqueſt. This knight, who commanded a large force, and had ſome able men at arms with him, left the others. Sir Robert Knolles and ſir Aleyne Boxhull, however kept together, and were quartered pretty near to Mans. Sir Thomas Grantſon, ſir Gilbert Gifford, ſir Geoffry Worſley, and ſir William Neville, were quartered a good day's march in the rear.

When ſir Robert Knolles and ſir Aleyne Boxhull heard that the conſtable of France and the lord de Cliſſon were come into thoſe parts, they were much rejoiced, and ſaid, 'It will be well for us to collect our forces more together, and poſt ourſelves to our advantage in this country; for ſir Bertrand, in the novelty of office, is certainly come to look at us, and he would not have been happy if he had not made this expedition. We have already rode through the realm of France without meeting with any hindrance. Let us inform ſir Hugh Calverly (who is at Saumur on the Loire), and ſir Robert Cheney, ſir Robert Briquet, and the other captains of companies who

* Sir John Menſtreworth. Froiſſart calls him *Maiſtrurde*. I have followed Barnes, who adds that he was a traitor, ſold to the French, and, having embezzled large ſums deſtined for the pay of the army, was afraid to be called to an account for them.

are near us, of our ſituation and intentions, who will willingly haſten to join us. We may therefore fall upon this new conſtable, and the lord de Cliſſon, who is ſo much our enemy*; and we ſhall make a handſome finiſh to our campaign.'

Between ſir Robert Knolles, ſir Aleyne Boxhull, and ſir John Seton, there was not any difference of opinion; and they acted always in uniſon. They immediately ſent off meſſengers ſecretly to ſir Hugh Calverly, ſir Robert Briquet, and the others, with letters to inform them how they were ſituated, and to propoſe that they ſhould join in an attack upon the French. They ſignified the ſame to ſir Thomas Grantſon, ſir Gilbert Gifford, ſir Geoffry Worſley and the others, deſiring them

---

* *The lord de Cliſſon, ſo much our enemy.* His quarrel with the duke of Brittany and the Engliſh, to whom he had always been attached, was cauſed by the duke's refuſal of a requeſt he made for the lordſhip of Gavre, which was very convenient to him, and near his caſtle of Blein.

When he aſked for it, the duke ſaid he had diſpoſed of it in favour of ſir John Chandos, to whom he had eſſential obligations. Cliſſon, enraged at this preference, ſwore he would never have an Engliſhman for his neighbour, ſet fire to the houſe, and had the ſtones caried to Blein, uſing them to fortify this caſtle. He conceived ſo mortal a hatred to the Engliſh that he embraced the party of the counteſs de Penthievre, on whom he had before made war, and accepted the lieutenancy of Brittany under her, and the guard of all the places ſhe had there, This change of conduct introduced him to the ſervice of Charles V. who admitted him to his councils, loaded him with gifts, and gave him the lieutenance general de Touraine.—*Memoires de Bertrand du Gueſclin, par Berville, vol.* ii. p. 210, note.

to

to advance to a place which they pointed out to them, for they were in hopes to engage the French who had come on this expedition. Upon receiving this intelligence, they all made ready with great cheerfulneſs to join their companies, amounting to about two hundred ſpears.

This matter, however, was not carried on ſo ſecretly but that ſir Bertrand and the lord de Cliſſon got wind of it, and knew alſo what was ntended on the junction of their forces: they therefore armed themſelves during the night, and, marching with their men and garriſons, took the field. This ſame night, ſir Thomas Grantſon, ſir Geoffry Worſley, ſir Gilbert Gifford, ſir William Neville and the others, had left their quarters, and advanced towards ſir Robert Knolles and ſir Aleyne Boxhull to a ſpot where they expected to find them. But their march was ſhortened; for, directly at a place called Pont-valin, they were met by the French, who immediately charged them, and ſurrounded them, as they were full four hundred lances and the Engliſh about two hundred. The battle was ſharp and long, and well fought on both ſides. As ſoon as they met, they diſmounted, and attacked each other moſt valiantly with ſpears and ſwords. The French gained the victory over the Engliſh, who were all ſlain or made priſoners; for not an Engliſhman fled, except ſome of the pages or ſervants, who, mounting their maſters' courſers, made off as faſt as poſſible when they ſaw they were defeated. Among the priſoners were, ſir Thomas Grantſon,

ſir Gilbert Gifford, ſir Geoffry Worſley, ſir William Neville, ſir Philip Courtenay, ſir Hugh Deſpencer, and many more knights and ſquires, who were all conducted to the city of Mans.

Intelligence of this was ſpeedily ſpread over the country, and ſoon known to ſir Robert Knolles, ſir Hugh Calverley and the others, who were much vexed thereat, and broke up their intended attack, through this unexpected event. Thoſe at Saumur, as well as in the other quarters, remained quiet. Sir Robert Knolles and ſir Aleyne Boxhull made a handſome retreat into Brittany, for they were not far diſtant. Sir Robert went to his caſtle of Derval, where he gave orders to all his men at arms and archers to go wherever they might find profit or honour, and ſeveral returned to England, whence they had come. Sir Aleyne Boxhull went to paſs the winter in his town of St. Sauveur le Vicomte, which the king of England had given to him.

After the defeat of Pont-valin, where a part of the Engliſh were ſlain and the remainder put to the rout, ſo that the expedition was ruined, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin (whoſe entrance into the office of conſtable had been thus fortunately ſignalized, in a way to gain him great honour and reputation) came to Paris, accompanied by the lord de Cliſſon, and bringing with them the greater part of the priſoners, to whom they behaved very handſomely, allowing them to go at large on their parole for their ranſom. They neither ſhut them up in priſon, nor put on ſhackles and fetters, as

the

the Germans do in order to obtain a heavier ranſom. Curſes on them for it. Theſe people are without pity or honour, and they ought never to receive quarter. The French entertained their priſoners well, and ranſomed them courteouſly without being too hard with them.

The prince of Wales, the duke of Lancaſter and all the Engliſh, who, after the conqueſt and vengeance taken on Limoges, had retired to Cognac, were much diſmayed by the defeat at Pontvalin.

This year, about Chriſtmas, pope Urban V. died at Avignon. He was a learned and wiſe man, and a good Frenchman. The cardinals aſſembled in conclave to chooſe a ſucceſſor, when they unanimouſly elected the cardinal de Beaufort, who took the name of pope Gregory XI. The king of France was well pleaſed with this creation and divine election, for he knew him to be a loyal Frenchman and a prudent man. The duke of Anjou was at Avignon during the conclave, and took much pains that he ſhould be elected pope.

CHAP. XXIV.

SIR EUSTACE D'AMBRETICOURT IS MADE PRISONER AND RANSOMED.—SIR RAYMOND DE MARNEIL, A PARTISAN OF FRANCE, IS TAKEN, AND IN IMMINENT DANGER, BUT SAVED BY HIS KEEPER.

A VERY unfortunate adventure befel ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt much about this time. As he was riding one day through Limouſin, he came in the evening to the caſtle of the lord de Pierre Buffiere, which he entered, thinking him a friend, a brother ſoldier and a good Engliſhman. But Pierre Buffiere had given up his caſtle to Thibaut du Pont, a man at arms from Brittany, and his company. Thibaut ſeized ſir Eſtuace, who was not any way on his guard, made him his priſoner, and afterward ranſomed him for twelve thouſand francs, of which he paid down four thouſand, and left his ſon, François d'Ambreticourt, his hoſtage for the remainder to the duke of Bourbon, who had gone ſecurity for him, and had taken great pains to obtain his liberty, becauſe ſir Euſtace had been very active in obtaining the freedom of the lady his mother, when ſhe had been made priſoner by the free companies at Belleperche. After he had obtained his liberty, ſir Euſtace went and reſided in Carentan, beyond the fords of St. Clement in lower Normandy, a very handſome town which

the

the king of Navarre had given him, and where he died. God have mercy on his ſoul! for whilſt he lived and remained in the world he was a moſt valiant knight.

Nearly at this period, ſir Raymond de Marneil, who had changed his party from the Engliſh to the French, was returning to his own country from Paris, when he met with a diſagreeable accident. On his road, he encountered a body of Engliſh, belonging to the forces of ſir Hugh Calverley, commanded by a knight of Poitou, and came ſo ſuddenly among them that he could not eſcape: he was thus taken, and carried priſoner to the caſtle of the knight in Poitou. The capture of ſir Raymond was known in England, and came to the king's knowledge, who immediately wrote to the knight, ordering him to ſend that enemy and traitor ſir Raymond de Marneil directly to England, on whom he would wreak ſuch vengeance that it ſhould ſerve as an example to all others; and that he would pay him ſix thouſand francs for his ranſom. Sir Geoffry d'Argenton, who had taken ſir Raymond, was not willing to diſobey the orders of his ſovereign and lord, and replied he would punctually follow his commands.

Sir Raymond de Marneil was informed that the king of England wiſhed to have his perſon, and had ſent orders to that effect; and alſo that ſir Geoffry was determined to obey him. He was therefore more alarmed than ever, and not without reaſon. He began to utter in his priſon the moſt piteous moans, inſomuch that the perſon who

guarded him, and was an Engliſhman, began to compaſſionate him and gently to ſooth him.

Sir Raymond, who ſaw no rays of comfort in his diſtreſs, ſince he was to be ſent to England, at laſt opened his mind to his keeper. 'My friend,' ſaid he, 'if you will engage to deliver me from the peril in which I am, I will promiſe and ſwear on my loyalty to divide half and half with you all my landed poſſeſſions, which you ſhall have for your inheritance; and never as long as I live will I be wanting to you in whatever manner you may pleaſe.' The Engliſhman, who was poor, conſidered that ſir Raymond was in danger of his life, and as he had promiſed him ſuch a handſome recompenſe to ſave it, he took compaſſion on him, and ſaid he would do all he could to ſerve him. Sir Raymond heard this with great joy, and ſwore upon his honour to perform ſtrictly what he had promiſed, and even more if he inſiſted upon it. Upon which they conſulted how they could beſt bring this buſineſs to a happy end.

When night came, the Engliſhman, who kept the keys of the tower of the caſtle where ſir Raymond lay, opened his priſon and a poſtern-gate, from whence they iſſued into the plain, and made for a wood, to prevent themſelves being overtaken. They were in greater diſtreſs all the night than can be imagined; for they marched ſeven leagues on foot, and it had frozen ſo hard, that their feet were all cut and torn. At laſt, however, at the dawn they came to a French fortreſs, where they were heartily received by the companions who guarded

it,

it. Sir Raymond related to them his adventures, and they all returned thanks to God for his fortunate eſcape. In truth, when the knight on the morrow found they had gone off, he ſent horſemen every where round the country in ſearch of them, but in vain.

In this manner did ſir Raymond de Marneil eſcape from ſuch imminent danger. He returned to Limouſin, and told all his friends his great obligations to the Engliſh ſquire. The Engliſhman was much honoured by them, and ſir Raymond wanted to divide his eſtate with him; but he refuſed to accept ſo much, and would only take two hundred livres a-year, adding that was fully ſufficient for the ſupport of himſelf in his ſituation.

CHAP. XXV.

THE PRINCE OF WALES, HAVING LOST BY DEATH HIS ELDEST SON, GIVES UP THE DUCHY OF AQUITAINE TO THE CARE OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—FOUR KNIGHTS OF BRITTANY TAKE THE CASTLE OF MONT-PAON*.

AT this time, the eldeſt ſon of the prince and princeſs of Wales died in the city of Bourdeaux. They were exceedingly grieved at this

* Mont-paon,—a village of Rouergue, election of Milhaud.

event, and not without reaſon. The prince was adviſed to return to England, as perhaps he might there recover his health; and, as this advice was given him by his phyſicians and ſurgeons, he agreed to it. Preparations were made for his departure; and, I believe, the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke were ordered to return with him to bear him company.

When the prince was about to leave Aquitaine, and his veſſel was in the harbour of Bourdeaux, on the river Garonne, where he had arrived with the princeſs and the young Richard, his ſon, he iſſued from the city of Bourdeaux a ſpecial ſummons to all the barons and knights of Gaſcony and Poitou, and to all others over whom he was lord or who depended on him. When they were arrived, and aſſembled before him in his hall of audience, he addreſſed them by ſaying, 'that during the time he had been their prince, he had always maintained them in peace, proſperity, and power, as far as depended on him, againſt all their enemies; but that now, in the hope of recovering his health, of which he had great need, he intended to return to England: he therefore beſought them earneſtly to put their faith in, and to ſerve and obey his brother, the duke of Lancaſter, as they had before ſerved and obeyed him: that they would find him a good and courteous lord, and he begged of them to aid and aſſiſt him in all his affairs'.

The barons of Aquitaine, Gaſcony, Poitou and Saintonge aſſented to his requeſt, and ſwore upon their faith and loyalty never to deſert him. They per-

performed fealty and homage to the duke, declaring themſelves willing to pay him all affection, ſervice and obedience. This they ſwore in the prince's preſence, and they all kiſſed him on the mouth*. After theſe affairs were ſettled, the prince did not tarry long in Bourdeaux, but embarked on board his veſſel with the princeſs and his ſon, accompanied by the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke. There were in this fleet five hundred combatants, beſides archers. They had favourable weather, and, meeting with no accident, arrived ſafely at Southampton. They were diſembarked; and, after having refreſhed themſelves for two days, all mounted their horſes, and took the road for Windſor, except the prince, who was carried in his litter. On their arrival, they found the king, who was then there. He received his children very kindly, and made many enquiries into the ſtate of Guienne. After the prince had made ſome ſtay with the king, he took his leave, and retired to his manor of Berkhamſtead, twenty miles from the city of London.

We will for the preſent leave the prince, and ſay what had paſſed in Aquitaine.

Soon after the departure of the prince from Bourdeaux, the duke of Lancaſter ordered preparations for the funeral of his nephew Edward. It

* *All kiſſed him on the mouth.* Homage de bouche et des mains is done by a vaſſal with head uncovered, hands joined and a kiſs received, which binds him to fight for his lord only in defence of the lands whereof he holds.—COTGRAVE.

was

was very grand and magnificent, and was attended by all the barons of Gaſcony and Poitou*.

Whilſt all theſe things were going forward, and the funeral occupied every one's attention, and detained the barons in Bourdeaux, there iſſued forth from the garriſon of Perigord upwards of two hundred lances of Bretons, whom the duke of Anjou had ſent and poſted there. They were commanded by four valiant and hardy knights, whoſe names were, ſir William de Longueval, ſir Alain de la Houſſaye, ſir Louis de Mailly and the lord d'Arcy. Theſe knights marched with their men to a handſome and ſtrong caſtle called Mont-paon, of which a knight was lord. When theſe Bretons arrived, and had advanced up to the barriers, they manœuvred as if they intended an immediate aſſault, and completely ſurrounded it. Upon which ſir William de Mont-paon, proving he had more of French courage than Engliſh, turned to them, and in ſhort ſurrendered. He gave admittance to theſe knights and their companions into his caſtle, of which they took poſſeſſion, and ſaid they would defend it againſt all the world. They repaired and added to it whatever might have been wanting.

Intelligence of this was ſoon carried to Bourdeaux, when the duke of Lancaſter told the barons

---

* He was buried in the Auguſtine Friars, London.

' Here was interred the bodie of Edward, the eldeſt ſonne of Edward the black prince, by Joan his wife, ſurnamed The Faire Maide of Kent, who was born at Angoleſme anno 1375, and died at ſeven years of age,'—*Weever's Funeral Monuments.*

they

they were inactive, for that the Bretons had made an incurſion, and had taken Mont-paon, which was cloſe to their borders. Indeed, when the duke and barons firſt heard of this, they were much aſhamed and made immediate preparations for marching towards that part; they ſet out from the city of Bourdeaux on a Wedneſday after dinner.

With the duke of Lancaſter there were, the lords de Pons and de Partenay, ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Percival de Coulongne, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir Maubrun de Linieres, ſir William de Montendre, ſir Hugh de Vinoye, the lord de Crupenac, and many more knights and barons of Poitou and Saintonge. From Gaſcony were, the captal de Buch, the lord de Pommiers, ſir Helie de Pommiers, the lords de Chaumont, de Montferrant, de Langeron, the ſouldich de la Trane, ſir Bernardet de l'Abret, the lord de Gironde, ſir Aimery de Teſtu, and ſeveral others. Of the Engliſh were, ſir Thomas Felton, lord Thomas Percy, the lord Roos, ſir Michael de la Pole, the lord Willoughby, ſir William Beauchamp, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir Baldwin de Franville, the earl of Angus and many more. They were in all rather more than ſeven hundred ſpears and five hundred archers. They marched in good order to Mont-paon, where on their arrival ſir William de Montpaon, ſeeing the duke of Lancaſter and his army come to beſiege him, felt very uneaſy; for he knew that, if he were taken, he ſhould die a diſgraceful death, without hopes of mercy, as he had done too much againſt

againſt him to expect any. He told his fears to the four knights, and ſaid he ſhould make his eſcape and go to Perigord; but that they were maſters of his caſtle to do as they pleaſed with it. Upon this he directly departed, and went to the city of Perigord, which was very ſtrong, and left his caſtle under the guard of theſe four knights.

CHAP. XXVI.

THE FOUR KNIGHTS DEFEND THEMSELVES AGAINST THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—THE DUKE, ON TAKING THE PLACE, ADMITS THEM TO RANSOM.

WHEN the duke of Lancaſter was arrived at Mont-paon, with all his barons, knights and men at arms, he immediately laid ſiege to it. They built themſelves ſubſtantial huts all round the caſtle, as if they were to remain there ſeven years. They were not, however, idle, but began the aſſault with great vigour, and had large quantities of wood and faggots cut down by the peaſants, and carried to the ditches, which they threw in and covered with large beams and earth; by which means they were ſo filled up that they could advance to the walls to ſkirmiſh with the garriſon, as was daily done, and there were many gallant conflicts.

The

The four Breton knights in the caſtle were right good men at arms, and fought and defended themſelves ſo valorouſly, that they were deſerving of great praiſe. They were not diſmayed, however near the Engliſh or Gaſcons might advance, and never ſuffered them to return conquerors.

Not far diſtant, in the garriſon of St. Macaire*, which belonged to the Bretons, were John de Maleſtroit and Silveſtre Budes, the governors of it, who, hearing every day of the great feats of arms which were doing before Mont-paon, were anxious to be partakers of them. They converſed frequently on this ſubject, ſaying, 'Since we know that our companions are ſo near to us, and thoſe valiant men,' as ſuch a one and ſuch a one, naming them, 'have daily five or ſix attacks on their hands, and are continually fighting, whilſt we remain here doing of nothing, we certainly do not act well.' They were very eager to go and aſſiſt them; but, when they and their companions had all ſpoken, they began to conſider the danger there might be, if they ſhould leave the garriſon without one of the commanders, and this puzzled them how to act. Silveſtre Budes ſaid, 'By God I will go.' 'Silveſtre', replied John, 'you ſhall ſtay, and I will go.' This diſpute continued ſome time. At laſt they agreed on their oaths, before all their companions, to draw ſtraws, and that he who had the longeſt ſtraw ſhould go, and the other re-

* St. Macaire,—a city of Guienne, on the Garronne, nine leagues from Bourdeaux.

main.

main. Upon which they drew ſtraws, and Silveſtre Budes had the longeſt, which created a great laugh among the company,

Silveſtre did not take it for a joke, but went and made himſelf ready; when, mounting his horſe, he ſet off with eleven men at arms, and rode for the caſtle of Mont-paon, where he arrived and entered in the evening. The knights and garriſon were much rejoiced at ſeeing him, for they had a high opinion of his courage.

As I have before ſaid, there were continued attacks every day made on Mont-paon; and the knights within defended themſelves ſo well that they acquired great honour, for until a large piece of the wall had been thrown down, they were not any way diſmayed.

The Engliſh had brought thither large machines and other engines of aſſault, which they could now place near to the walls where the ditches were filled up. There were alſo footmen covered with large ſhields, who worked with pick-axes, and laboured ſo earneſtly that one afternoon they flung down upwards of forty feet of the wall. The lords of the army directly ordered out a body of archers, who kept up ſo well-directed and ſharp an attack with their arrows that none could ſtand againſt them, nor even ſhow themſelves.

Upon this, ſir William de Longueval, ſir Alain de la Houſſaye, ſir Louis de Mailly and the lord d'Arcy, finding from this ſituation that they could not any longer hold out, ſent one of their heralds mounted on horſeback, through the breach, to

ſpeak

ſpeak with the duke of Lancaſter; for they wiſhed, if poſſible, to enter into a treaty. The herald advanced to the duke, way being made for him, and explained the buſineſs on which he was ſent. The duke, by the advice of thoſe about him, granted an armiſtice to the garriſon during the time of a parley; and the herald returned with his anſwer to his maſters. The four knights directly came forward upon the ditch, and the duke ſent ſir Guiſcard d'Angle to hold a parley with them.

Upon the ditch, therefore, they entered on a treaty, by aſking, 'In what ſort or manner does the duke intend to make us priſoners?' Sir Guiſcard, who had received his inſtructions, replied; 'Gentlemen, you have greatly diſpleaſed my lord; for you have detained him here ſeveral weeks*, which has fretted him very much, and cauſed the loſs of ſeveral of his men: for which reaſons, he will not receive you, nor grant you mercy, but will have you ſurrender yourſelves ſimply to him. He alſo inſiſts on ſir William de Mont-paon being firſt given up, for him to be dealt with according to his deſerts as a traitor.'

Sir Louis de Mailly replied; 'Sir Guiſcard, in regard to ſir William de Mont-paon, whom you require from us, we ſwear truly and loyally that

* *Several weeks.* All my copies differ as to the number of weeks: ſome eleven, ſome ſix weeks: I have therefore ſaid ſeveral weeks, as it appears very uncertain: but I ſhould rather incline to the ſmaller number.

we are ignorant what is become of him, for he did not remain in this town a moment after you had begun to beſiege it. But it will be very hard for us to ſurrender ourſelves in the manner you inſiſt on, who are ſoldiers ſent here for pay, juſt as your commanders may ſend you, or you may be obliged to it by perſonal ſervice; and, before we accept of ſuch a bargain, we will ſell our lives ſo dearly that report ſhall ſpeak of it a hundred years hence. Return, therefore, to the duke of Lancaſter, and tell him to accept of us in a courteous manner, upon certain terms of ranſom, as he would wiſh ſhould be done to any of his own party, ſhould they happen to be ſo unfortunate.'

Sir Guiſcard anſwered, that he would very willingly do ſo to the utmoſt of his power. With theſe words, he returned to the duke, and took with him the captal de Buch, the lords de Roſen and de Mucident, the better to forward the buſineſs. When theſe lords were come into the duke's preſence, they remonſtrated with him ſo eloquently, and with ſuch good ſucceſs, that he granted their requeſt, and received the four knights, with Silveſtre Budes, and their men, in mercy as priſoners.

Thus had he once more poſſeſſion of the caſtle of Mont-paon, and received the homage of the inhabitants of the town. He placed there two gaſcon knights as governors, with forty men at arms and as many archers, and had all the walls completely

completely repaired by maſons in the neighbourhood: he victualled the place, and ſupplied it well with all ſorts of artillery.

CHAP. XXVII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER DISBANDS HIS ARMY, AND RETURNS TO BOURDEAUX.—THE LORD DE PONS TURNS TO THE FRENCH PARTY.

AFTER the conqueſt of Mont-paon, when the duke of Lancaſter had reinforced it with good men at arms and captains, he broke up his camp, and diſbanded his army. Each therefore went to his own home, and the duke returned to Bourdeaux. The Poitevins retreated to their country, and the Gaſcons to their towns and caſtles; but the free companies diſperſed themſelves over the whole principality, where they did as much miſchief to friends as enemies. The duke winked at this, and ſuffered them to act as they pleaſed, becauſe he thought he might ſoon have a freſh occaſion for their ſervices; more eſpecially as the war at that moment was much more oppreſſive in Poitou, without compariſon, than any where elſe.

The French kept a large garriſon in the caſtle of Montcontour, four leagues diſtant from Thouars, and ſix from Poitiers, which was commanded by ſir Peter de Guerfille and Jourdain de Coulongne. They daily haraſſed the country, either about Thouars or about Poitiers, and greatly da-

maged and pillaged the inhabitants. On the other ſide, Carnet le Breton held Chatelheraut, with ſeven hundred Bretons, who much ruined the country. The garriſons from la Roche-poſay and St. Salvin were out almoſt every day, ſo that the barons and knights of Poitou attached to the Engliſh dared not venture abroad but in large parties, for fear of the French who had thus forced themſelves into their country.

Soon after the return from Mont-paon, and when the lords of Poitou had retired to their own country, which was one of the frontiers to France, many ſecret negotiations were ſet on foot by the lord Louis de St. Julien, the viſcount de la Roche-chouart, and ſeveral others in the French intereſt, who, with large ſums received from the king of France, laboured day and night, to gain over the lords of Poitou to his party. Theſe negotiations were ſo ſucceſsful that the lord de Pons turned to the French, in ſpite of the entreaties of the lady his wife, and of all the inhabitants of the town of Pons in Poitou. Notwithſtanding, however, the lord de Pons changed his ſide, the lady remained attached to the Engliſh. All the barons and knights in Poitou in the Engliſh intereſt were violently enraged, for the lord de Pons was a powerful baron.

The duke of Lancaſter was much grieved at this, and, wiſhing every curſe to attend the lord, felt himſelf obliged to the lady and to thoſe of the town who had not deſerted him. Sir Aimemon de Bours, a good and valiant knight, was ordered to aſſiſt the lady with his advice and courage; for the

lord

lord de Pons advanced every day to the gates of the town, doing no damage to any one; but ſometimes he was driven back, and retreated with loſs.

CHAP. XXVIII.

THE ENGLISH TAKE THE CASTLE OF MONTCONTOUR.

THUS were the Engliſh affairs in Poitou entangled; the lords and knights oppoſed to each other; when the ſtrong oppreſſed the weak, and none received either law, juſtice or right. The caſtles and ſtrong places were intermixed; ſome being French, others Engliſh, who each made excurſions on the other, and pillaged on all ſides without mercy.

Some of the barons and knights of Poitou of the Engliſh party, having conſidered that the garriſon of Montcontour was more active in haraſſing the country than the others, reſolved to march thither and lay ſiege to it. They therefore iſſued a ſummons from the city of Poitiers in the name of lord Thomas Percy, ſénéſchal of Poitou, which was obeyed by all knights and ſquires. They amounted to five hundred ſpears and full two thouſand footmen, with large ſhields, among the archers who accompanied them. There were ſir Guiſ-

tard d'Angle, ſir Louis d'Harcourt, the lords de Partenay, de Pinane, de Tannaybouton, du Cupegnac, ſir Percival de Coulongne*, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, ſir Hugh de Vinoye, the lord de Coyes, the lord de Puiſſances, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir Maubrun de Linieres and ſeveral more. There were alſo ſome Engliſh, who at the time were reſident in Poitou, either from the offices they held there, or to aſſiſt in guarding the country; ſuch as ſir Baldwin de Franville, the earl of Angus, ſir Walter Hewett, ſir Richard de Pontchardon and others.

When they had been muſtered at Poitiers, and had completed their preparations, they marched from thence, taking the road for Montcontour, in full array, with every thing neceſſary for the ſiege of that place.

The caſtle of Montcontour is ſituated in the country of Anjou, is very ſtrong and handſome, and four leagues diſtant from Thouars. The Poitevins, to the amount of three thouſand combatants, continued their march until they arrived there, when they laid ſiege to it, and inveſted it on all ſides. There had been brought from Thouars and Poitiers large engines, which they pointed againſt the caſtle, and flung from them ſtones night and day. They made daily aſſaults, and the lords frequently had ſkirmiſhes with the garriſon, in which ſeveral gallant actions were per-

* Sir Percival de Coulongne. Barnes calls him ſir Percival Collins.

formed:

formed: there were with the Poitevins ſeveral of the free companies, who were unwilling to remain during the ſiege; ſuch as John Creſwell and David Hollegrave: theſe two, with ſir Walter Hewett, were their leaders.

Sir Peter de Guerfille* and Jourdain de Coulongne, who were in the caſtle, defended it valiantly, and advanced every day to the combat with the Engliſh at their barriers. On the tenth day after their arrival, in the midſt of theſe attacks, the Engliſh and Poitevins aſſaulted it ſo briſkly, and in ſuch good order and ſtrength, that they broke down the walls of the caſtle, through which they paſſed, and conquered the French. All within were ſlain, except ſir Peter and Jourdain, and five or ſix men at arms, to whom the companions granted quarter.

After the capture of Montcontour, lord Thomas Percy†, ſir Louis de Harcourt, and ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, by the advice and conſent of the other barons and knights, gave the caſtle to ſir Walter

---

* In the hiſt. de Bretagne, he is called Pierre de la Greſille.

† Lord Thomas Percy—was knight of the Garter.—*Anſtis MS. Collections.*

'He was brother to the firſt earl of Northumberland, and uncle to Hotſpur who was created earl of Worceſter by Richard II. His barony was that of Haverfordweſt, and he had a conſiderable eſtate in South Wales, now in the poſſeſſion of the duke of Rutland.' Note in the above Collections, by Dr. Percy, biſhop of Dromore.

This eſtate is, I believe, ſold: at leaſt a rent reſolute was ſold by the duke (lieutenant of Ireland) to Mr. John Manners

Hewett, John Creſswell, and David Hollegrave and their companies, who were full five hundred combatants, for them to guard the frontiers againſt Anjou and Maine. The lords then marched away, and diſmiſſed their army. Thus was this caſtle made a guard for the borders by thoſe to whom it had been given, who collected a numerous garriſon, and had it completely repaired. They maintained poſſeſſion of it for a very long time, and much haraſſed all the country about it; for there was not a day but they made ſome excurſions into Anjou or Maine.

CHAP. XXIX.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN, CONSTABLE OF FRANCE, BESIEGES THE TOWN OF UZES*, WHICH SURRENDERS TO HIM UPON CAPITULATION.

WE will now return to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, conſtable of France, who had remained at Paris, near the king, ſince the defeat of Pontvalin where he and ſir Oliver de Cliſſon had ſo

* Uzes. I am inclined to believe it muſt be Uſſon, a town in Auvergne, inſtead of Uzes, which is in Lower Languedoc, eight leagues from Avignon. See Hiſt. de Bretagne, vol. i. p. 336.

dread-

dreadfully beaten the Engliſh, as has been before related. It was told him that the Engliſh ſtill kept the field in Poitou and Guienne: upon which he declared his intentions, that ſoon after Candlemas, at the commencement of ſpring, he ſhould collect a very large force of men at arms and noblemen, and would make an incurſion to another part of the country, ſince the Engliſh were thus employed in Quercy, Poitou and Rouergue.

Some of the Engliſh had very honourably remained in theſe countries, and had maintained themſelves there ſince the renewal of the war. Sir John Devereux and his men had again got poſſeſſion of Limouſin, and had taken in Auvergne a caſtle with its dependencies, called Uzes, which the conſtable ſaid was not to be ſuffered, and that he was determined to march thither. With the king's permiſſion, he aſſembled a large body of men at arms; and, quitting Paris, his army increaſed daily until he arrived in Auvergne.

There came with him, under his command, the duke of Berry, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the count du Perche his brother, the count de St. Pol, the dauphin of Auvergne, the counts de Vendôme and de Porcien, the lords de Sully and de Montagu, ſir Hugh Dauphin, the lord de Beaujeu, the lords de Rochefort and de Talençon, and a great many more barons and knights of France.

This army continued its march until it came before the city of Uzes, when they encamped; and, after remaining there fifteen days, during

which time many fierce aſſaults were made, but without impreſſion on the fortreſs, for it had an Engliſh garriſon who very valiantly defended it, they broke up the ſiege and departed, the conſtable continuing his march into Rouergue. Some of the principal lords took this opportunity of going to Avington to viſit pope Gregory and the duke of Anjou, who at that time was with him. Soon after this viſit, and having had a conference with the duke, they left the city of Avignon and followed the conſtable, who was advancing through Rouergue, taking towns and caſtles from the Engliſh. They came before the town of Milhaud*, which was held by Sir Thomas Wake†, and had been ſo for ſome time: they laid ſiege to it, as well as to the rock of Vauclerc; but the Engliſh knight ſurrendered upon terms, to ſir Bertrand, this as well as ſome other caſtles on the borders of Limouſin.

When ſir Bertrand had refreſhed his army, he marched away, taking the road on his return to the city of Uzes, to which he again laid ſiege. The conſtable and the dukes of Berry and Bourbon had ordered large machines to be brought from Rioms and Clermont, which they had pointed, as well as other warlike engines againſt the walls of the caſtle.

---

* Milhaud,—a town in Rouergue, on the Tarne.

† Sir Thomas Wake. In all the editions, printed and MSS. which I have ſeen, this name is ſtrangely diſfigured. I have followed Barnes, for I could not make any thing of *Veulquefairt* or *Bueilcafare*.

The

The Engliſh, who had before ſo gallantly defended the place, ſeeing the great preparations which were making againſt them, as well as the numerous army of the beſiegers, and having heard the manner in which ſir Thomas Wake had given up the ſtrong places in Rouergue, at the ſame time not expecting any ſuccours to come to their aſſiſtance, held a council, and reſolved to ſurrender upon capitulation, but not upon any other terms. They entered into a treaty with the conſtable, which was ſo well conducted on all ſides, that they were to march out without danger or blame, carrying off whatever they could take with them, and beſides were to be eſcorted as far as St. Severe in Limouſin. This treaty was ſtrictly obſerved, and the Engliſh marched out, having ſurrendered whatever they had held in the town and caſtle of Uzes, and were conducted without peril to the garriſon they had fixed upon. Sir Bertrand gained by this expedition a very large extent of country, of which the Engliſh had had poſſeſſion, and then returned to France.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

THE KING OF ENGLAND'S ANGER AGAINST SIR ROBERT KNOLLES IS APPEASED.—PEACE IS MADE BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND FLEMINGS.

YOU have before heard of the expedition which ſir Robert Knolles* commanded in France, and how afterwards he retired to his caſtle of Derval in Brittany. In truth, ſome of the Engliſh, on

---

* Sir Robert Knolles—'was but of mean parentage in the county of Cheſter, but by his valour advanced from a common ſoldier in the French wars under Edward III. to a great commander. Being ſent general of an army into France, in deſpite of their power, he drove the people before him like ſheep, deſtroying towns, caſtles, and cities in ſuch a manner and number that long after, in memory of this act, the ſharp points and gable ends of overthrown houſes and minſters were called Knolles' Mitres. After which, to make himſelf as well beloved of his country, he built a goodly fair bridge at Rocheſter over the Medway, with a chapel and chauntry at the eaſt end thereof. He built much at the Grayfriars, London, and an hoſpital at Rome for Engliſh travellers and pilgrims. He deceaſed at his manor of Scone Thorpe in Norfolk,—was buried by the lady Conſtance, his wife, in the church of Grayfriars, London, 15th Auguſt 1407.'—*Weever's Fun. Mon.* p. 436.

In 1365, John de Montfort, duke of Brittany, gave him, at the aſſembly of the ſtates at Vannes, the lands, caſtle, &c. of Derval and Rougé, which had been excepted at the treaty of peace.—*Hiſt. de Bretagne.*

He

on their return home, ſpoke much againſt him, ſo that the king and his council had information of it, and were highly diſpleaſed with him. When ſir Robert heard of this, he ſent over his two principal ſquires to explain every thing, and to clear him of whatever might be ſaid againſt him; inſomuch that the king and his council were ſatisfied they had been wrongly informed, and thought as favourably of him as before. Sir Aleyne Boxhull, and other knights who were favourites with the king, aſſiſted in his diſculpation, and made ſir John Menſtreworth pay dearly for what he had done: he was taken, and publicly executed in the city of

---

He was created a knight of the garter, Richard II. and is, the 74th knight.

Knolles earl of Banbury, took his deſcent from ſir Robert Knolles.—*Dugdale's Baronage.*

Lobineau ſays, Derval, &c. was given to him and his deſcendants. In 1373, the duke, going into England, left his government to ſir Robert Knolles: but few lords obeyed him. The French beſieged his caſtle of Derval, which he had left in the cuſtody of Hugh Broc his kinſman, who capitulated to ſurrender if not relieved in two months, during which time no perſon was to be received there. But Knolles diſavowed the act of his nephew, alledging he could not treat without his conſent; ſo that the duke of Anjou ſent his herald to ſay, that having done contrary to his capitulation in admitting Knolles, in caſe he did not ſurrender, he would put to death the two knights and a ſquire who were the hoſtages; which being done, Knolles immediately executed three French knights and a ſquire, and threw their bodies into the ditch; whereupon the ſiege was raiſed,—*Lobineau*, p. 409.

London.

London*. By this act of juſtice ſir Robert Knolles was cleared of all the charges which had been laid againſt him, and remained in the good graces of the king and prince.

The king of England, who found himſelf hard preſſed by this war with France, gained as many friends as he could on the other ſide of the ſea. He had for allies the duke of Guelders, his nephew, and the duke of Juliers, who had engaged to raiſe a large force, as they were well able to do, and to make an incurſion into France. At this time, the king ſent the earl of Hereford† and ſome other knights of his houſehold, handſomely equipped, to Brittany, to conſult with the duke on the arrangements which it was neceſſary ſhould be made between them.

The Engliſh and Flemings were not at this time on good terms, but attacked each other whenever they met on the ſeas; and ſo much had the Flemings loſt that they were exceedingly angry. By accident, a fleet of each nation met off the iſland of

---

* His head was affixed to a pole on London Bridge, which, on the rebellion of Jack Straw, &c. was taken down to make room for the head of the biſhop of London.—*Leland's Collectanea*, vol. iii.

† Earl of Hereford,—Humphry Bohun, conſtable of England, 32d knight of the Garter. See Dugdale.

It appears however, from Rymer, that ſir Robert de Neville and Raulyn de Barey, ecuyer de ſa chambre, where the ambaſſadors from Edward.

Bas in Brittany*. The commander of the Flemings was John Peterſon, and of the Engliſh ſir Guy Brian†. As ſoon as they ſaw each other, they prepared for action, which was immediately begun; and very ſharp it was. The king's knights who accompanied the earl of Hereford, ſir Richard Sturey ‡, ſir Thomas Vuiſque and the others, were in this engagement.

Theſe knights and their men fought very valiantly againſt the Flemings, and exerted themſelves the more, becauſe the enemy were in greater numbers; and were better prepared for action, as, during the whole ſummer, they had been wiſhing to meet the Engliſh. However, this time they did not gain much by the meeting. This ſea-

---

* The iſland of Bas is on the coaſt of Brittany, near Morlais. In the original, it is, the two fleets met in a harbour of Brittany, 'qu' on dit à la Baye:' and Carte ſays in 'the bay:' but I ſhould rather ſuppoſe it was meant as I have tranſlated it. This ſignal victory is very little noticed by our hiſtorians.

† Sir Guy Brian—was 57th knight of the Garter, in the ſtall of ſir John Chandos. He was third huſband to Elizabeth dowager of William earl of Saliſbury—died 14th Richard II. He was brother to the biſhop of Ely.

Pat. 35. Ed. III. p. I. Guidoni de Bryan 200 marcos in provita quod prudenter deferebat vexillum regis, in quodam conflictu apud Cales.—*Anſtis MS. Collect.*

He is buried at Tewkſbury. In Gough's Sepulchral Monuments is a plate of his tomb.

‡ Sir Richard Sturey. I cannot find any thing of him but in the firſt volume of Leland's Collectanea, p. 183, date 1375. Ricardus Sturey revocatus in familiaritatem, et gratiam ab Edwardo rege.

fight

fight laſted full three hours: many gallant acts were performed, and many were killed and wounded by the arrows. The ſhips were grappled together with chains and hooks, ſo that they could not eſcape. In the end, the victory remained with the Engliſh; for the Flemings were diſcomfited, and John Peterſon, their captain, made priſoner: the reſt were either taken or ſlain, for none eſcaped.

The Engliſh made ſail for England with their prizes and priſoners, which prevented them from continuing their voyage to Brittany.

The king was much rejoiced at the ſucceſs of this engagement, and defeat of the Flemings, eſpecially when he learnt that they were the aggreſſors.

John Peterſon and his captains were put into cloſe confinement, and the others diſperſed in various parts of England.

After this defeat off the iſle of Bas, the king of England ordered a large armament to be prepared againſt the Flemings, to engage the enemy wherever they ſhould meet with them, and to blockade their ports, ſo that no veſſel could ſail from them without riſk of being taken.

When the citizens of Bruges, Ypres, and Ghent, heard of theſe orders, they ſummoned a council, and, after mature deliberation, reſolved that it was not for their advantage to be at war or to have any ill-will with the Engliſh, who were their neighbours and connected with them by commerce, on account of any quarrel of their earl, nor would it be expedient for them to aid and ſupport him. The principal towns, therefore, diſſembled, but

ſent

ſent able and good men to negotiate with the king of England and his council, who managed the affair ſo well that on their return they brought peace to the country of Flanders and to the Flemings, conformable to certain articles in the teaty which was ſealed by each party. Thus was this buſineſs ſettled on a good and ſolid foundation.

We will now ſay ſomething of the king of Majorca.

CHAP. XXXI.

THE KING OF MAJORCA IS RANSOMED FROM KING HENRY OF SPAIN.—HE MAKES WAR ON THE KING OF ARRAGON.

YOU have before heard how James, king of Majorca, was taken at Valadolid, when king Henry re-conquered Spain, and that he continued priſoner to king Henry. When the queen of Naples, his wife, and the marchioneſs of Montferrat, his ſiſter, heard this they were much diſtreſſed, and immediately began to think of remedying it in the manner I ſhall mention. They ſent truſty men to king Henry to treat for his ranſom, who brought the matter about on conſideration of the ſum of one hundred thouſand francs, which thoſe ladies ſo graciouſly paid that king Henry was obliged to them.

The

The moment the king of Majorca gained his liberty he ſet out for Naples, but remained there only ſufficient time to collect large ſums of money and a body of troops, with which he again ſet off to make war on the king of Arragon his adverſary, whom he could never love, as he had ſlain his father and detained his inheritance. The king continued his journey until he came to Avignon, to viſit pope Gregory XI. where he ſtaid upwards of a month. He made ſuch able remonſtrances with the holy father that he liſtened to his entreaties, and conſented to the war which he was deſirous of making on the king of Arragon, as the cauſe which urged him to it was the recovery of his heritage.

The king of Majorca engaged men at arms at a very high price wherever he could meet with them; Engliſh, Gaſcons, Germans, Bretons, and ſome of the free companions, under the command of ſir Gracien du Châtel, John de Maleſtroit, Sylveſtre Budes, and James Bray. They might amount to about twelve hundred fighting men, who marched with him, and entered Navarre, and there remained with the conſent of that king. From thence they advanced into Arragon, where the knights and men at arms made war on the king, over-ran his country, taking and deſtroying ſmall forts and ranſoming its inhabitants.

The king of Arragon, expecting this war, ſent ſome men at arms towards the frontiers of his kingdom, under the command of the count de Roquebertin and the count de Rodais.

Whilſt

Whilſt this war was carried on, which was done with much inveteracy and cruelty, the king of Majorca fell ſick again at Val di Soria, and the diſorder increaſed ſo much that he there died. By this means, the Arragonians had peace for a long time from that quarter. The free companions who had been engaged in this war returned to France, to that party from whom they thought they ſhould gain moſt.

We will now ſpeak of the duke of Lancaſter.

CHAP. XXXII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER ESPOUSES THE ELDEST DAUGHTER OF THE LATE DON PEDRO, KING OF SPAIN.—TREATIES OF ALLIANCE ARE ENTERED INTO BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND SPAIN.

DUKE John of Lancaſter remained in the city of Bourdeaux, and with him many knights, barons, and ſquires of Aquitaine; for, notwithſtanding ſome barons of Poitou and Limouſin had turned to the French party, that of the Engliſh was in a tolerably good ſtate, and made frequent inroads upon the French, on which occaſions they loſt nothing, but well ſcoured the country of thoſe who were defending the frontiers for the duke of Anjou.

The duke of Lancaſter was a widower ſince the death of the lady Blanche, ducheſs of Lancaſter and Derby: upon which the barons of Gaſcony, in concert with ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, conſidered that don Pedro, king of Spain, had left two daughters by his marriage with the ſiſter of the king of Portugal, who were then in the city of Bayonne, whither they had been conducted, under the ſafeguard of ſome knights, by ſea, from the neighbourhood of Seville, for fear of king Henry. As ſoon as they were informed of the death of don Pedro, theſe ladies were almoſt diſtracted with grief. Every one compaſſionated them, for they were the true heireſſes of Caſtille, which was their juſt right, by ſucceſſion to their father.

This matter was thus opened to the duke: 'My lord, it is time you ſhould think of re-marrying: we know of a very noble match for you, one from which you or your heirs will be kings of Caſtille. It will be a charitable deed to comfort and adviſe damſels who are daughters of a king, eſpecially when in ſuch a pitiable ſtate as thoſe ladies are. Take, therefore, the eldeſt for your bride. We adviſe you to do ſo; for at this moment we know not where you can more nobly ally yourſelf, nor from whence greater profit can accrue to you.'

Theſe and ſuch like words made an impreſſion on the duke, and were ſo agreeable to him that he conſented to what they had propoſed with much good will. He immediately ordered four knights to ſeek theſe ladies without delay, whoſe names were

were Conſtance and Iſabella. The duke himſelf ſet out from Bourdeaux, when he knew they were coming, to meet them in grand array. He married the eldeſt, the lady Conſtance, at a village on the road called Rochefort, on the other ſide of the city of Bourdeaux, and gave there, on the day of his marriage, a ſplendid feaſt, to which were invited a great number of lords and ladies to add to its magnificence. Soon after the wedding, the duke conducted his lady to Bourdeaux, where there were again grand entertainments. The ducheſs and her ſiſter were much feaſted by the ladies and damſels of Bourdeaux, who preſented them with magnificent gifts and preſents for the love they bore the duke.

News was brought to king Henry in Caſtille, and to all the barons of the realms, who were allied to him by fealty and homage, that his niece had married the duke of Lancaſter, and that it was ſuppoſed the younger ſiſter would eſpouſe the earl of Cambridge upon the duke's return to England. The king was very melancholy on hearing this, and ſummoned his council. He was then adviſed to ſend able ambaſſadors to the king of France, to explain his ſituation. The king agreed to their opinions, and choſe the wiſeſt men in his kingdom to go to France. They ſet out with a grand retinue, and continued their road without interruption until they came to Paris, where they found the king, who received them with every politeneſs. The king of France had many interviews with theſe ambaſſadors, who had full powers, properly

ſealed and authenticated, to enter into any treaties, and to act in every thing for their lord, ſo that many ſecret councils were held. At laſt, every thing was concluded; and a treaty was entered into between the two kings, of perpetual amity, love and alliance, which was moſt ſolemnly ſworn to be maintained, and that neither party would diſſolve or weaken without the other's conſent. The king of France ſwore, on the word of a king, that he would aid and aſſiſt the king of Caſtille in every matter which might concern him, and that he would never make peace with the king of England without his being a party.

Sir Bertrand du Gueſclin, who much loved the king of Spain, took great pains to bring this treaty about. After this buſineſs had been completely finiſhed, the ambaſſadors took their leave and returned to Spain. They found their king at Léon, who was much pleaſed at having ſo well conclude the matters they were ſent on. King Henry, from this alliance, felt himſelf ever after much more aſſured and comforted.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER APPOINTS GOVERNORS IN GUIENNE: HE RETURNS TO ENGLAND, AND CARRIES HIS LADY WITH HIM.—SIR WALTER MANNY DIES IN LONDON.

WE now return to the duke of Lancaſter, who ſtill reſided in the city of Bourdeaux. He had determined that about Michaelmas he would embark for England, in order to make the king his father better acquainted with the affairs of Aquitaine. To this end he made every preparation; and, a little before his departure, he aſſembled in Bourdeaux all thoſe barons and knights of Gaſcony who were of the Engliſh party. When they were all collected, he addreſſed them by ſaying, he had a great deſire to return to England on particular buſineſs, as well for the advantage of all preſent as for the principality of Aquitaine; but that he would come back in the enſuing ſummer, if the king his father would permit it. Theſe words were very agreeable to all who heard them. He then appointed the captal de Buch, the lords de Mucident and de l'Eſparre, governors of all thoſe parts of Gaſcony which were attached to England. In Poitou, he nominated ſir Louis de Harcourt and the lord de Partenay. In Saintonge, ſir Louis d'Argenton and ſir William de Montendre.

He left all the ſénéſchals and other officers as they were before.

The council of the Gaſcons, Poitevins and Saintongers ordered ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, the lord de Pinane and ſir Aimery de Tarbe to accompany the duke to England, in order more fully to explain the affairs of Aquitaine; and the duke, by waiting for them, delayed ſome little his voyage.

When all was ready, they embarked on board of veſſels in the harbour of Bourdeaux, which is large and ſpacious. The duke was attended by a large body of men at arms and archers, having ſixty veſſels in the fleet, including thoſe with proviſions: he carried with him his lady and her ſiſter. They ſailed with favourable winds, which brought them ſafe to Southampton, where they diſembarked, and entered the town. They repoſed themſelves there for two days, when they ſet out, taking the road to Windſor, where the king reſided. He received his ſon the duke, the ladies, damſels, and the foreign knights with great joy and feaſts, but eſpecially ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, whom he was delighted to ſee.

About this time that gallant knight ſir Walter Manny* departed this life in the city of London; for which all the barons and knights of England were much afflicted, on account of the loyalty and prudence they had always found in him. He was

* Sir Walter Manny. See Dugdale. He came to England with queen Philippa.—was knight of the Garter.

buried

buried with great pomp in the monaſtery of the Carthuſians*, which he had built, at his own expence, without the walls of London. His funeral was attended by the king, his children, and the barons and prelates of England.

All his landed property on each ſide of the ſea fell to John earl of Pembroke, who had married his daughter Anne. The earl ſent two knights to take poſſeſſion of the lands which had fallen to him in Hainault, and they performed their duty well towards duke Albert, who at that time governed the country in the name of his deranged brother William.

CHAP. XXXIV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND APPOINTS THE EARL OF PEMBROKE GOVERNOR OF AQUITAINE.—THE SPANIARDS, BEING ALLIES OF FRANCE, ATTACK HIM AT SEA, OFF LA ROCHELLE.

DURING this winter (1372), many councils were held in England on the ſtate of affairs, and upon the beſt methods of conducting them. The Engliſh had planned two expeditions; one to Guienne, another into France through Calais; and were gaining allies, as well in Germany as in

* Now the Charter Houſe.

other parts of the empire, where ſeveral knights and ſquires had joined them. They were buſily employed in making great preparations for the largeſt army which had been ſeen for a long time.

The king of France was regularly informed by ſome Engliſhmen of theſe tranſactions, the ſtate of them, and what was the end propoſed. Upon which, having duly conſidered his intelligence, he acted accordingly and laid in a ſufficiency of proviſion in all the cities, towns and caſtles of Picardy; having ſtrongly reinforced the garriſons with men at arms, that the country might not be ſurpriſed.

When ſummer was arrived, king Edward kept the feaſt and ſolemnity of St. George in Windſor caſtle, as he was yearly accuſtomed to do, when ſir Guiſcard d'Angle was elected a brother-knight with the king, the princes and barons, who were called, in this confraternity, The Knights of the Blue Garter. The king, after this went to London, to his palace of Weſtminſter, where he held a grand council on public affairs. The duke of Lancaſter was ordered to invade France by entering Picardy. He was to be accompanied by his brother the earl of Cambridge. The king, at the entreaty of ſir Guiſcard d'Angle and the Poitevins, appointed the earl of Pembroke governor of Aquitaine, in room of the duke of Lancaſter, with orders to haſten to thoſe countries, and to conduct the war againſt the French.

The Gaſcos and Poitevins had requeſted of the king by letters, as well as by ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, that

that if he ſhould be adviſed not to ſend any of his own children, he would nominate the earl of Pembroke, whom as they loved much they deſired to have, for they knew him to be a good and hardy knight. The king, therefore, ſpoke to the earl of Pembroke, who, with ſeveral other barons and knights, was preſent at this council, ſaying; 'John, my fair ſon, I ordain and inſtitute you governor and captain of all the men at arms in Poitou, who according to the accounts I have had, are very numerous; and alſo of thoſe you will conduct from hence thither. You will, therefore, accompany ſir Guiſcard d'Angle into Poitou.' The earl of Pembroke, falling on his knees, replied: 'My lord, I return you my warmeſt thanks for the high honour you have conferred upon me. I will act for your majeſty beyond ſeas as one of your ſmalleſt marſhals.' After this, the council broke up, when the king returned to Windſor, taking ſir Guiſcard d'Angle with him. They frequently converſed on the affairs of Poitou and Guienne. In one of theſe converſations, he ſaid; 'My lord, when our governor and captain ſhall arrive in that country, we ſhall carry on a good war; for we ſhall there find between four and find hundred lances, who will all cheerfully obey you, but they muſt be regularly paid.' The king anſwered; 'Sir Guiſcard, ſir Guiſcard, do not be uneaſy on account of wanting money to continue the war, for I have enough, and will eagerly employ it for ſuch an occaſion, as it very ſenſibly affects us and our kingdom.' In theſe and ſuch like diſcourſes did the king of England

amuſe

amuſe himſelf with ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, for he had great confidence in him, not indeed without reaſon.

The ſeaſon was now arrived for the departure of the earl of Pembroke, who took his leave of the king, as did all thoſe who accompanied him. It ſeems to me that ſir Otho de Grantſon*, *d'outre la Somme*, was appointed to go with him.

The earl of Pembroke had not a very large force with him, but only the knights of his houſehold, on account of the information which ſir Guiſcard d'Angle had given the king; but he carried a ſufficient ſum in nobles and florins to pay three thouſand fighting men. After taking leave of the king, they ſet out for Southampton, where they remained fifteen days waiting for a wind. On the ſixteenth, they had a wind to their wiſh; and, embarking, they ſailed out of the harbour for the coaſts of Poitou, recommending themſelves to the care of God and St. George.

King Charles of France was perfectly well acquainted with the greater part of the king of England's councils, (I do not know by whom or how they were revealed to him) and that ſir

* Sir Otho de Grantſon. Barnes calls him ſir Thomas Grantſon; but ſir Thomas Grantſon was made priſoner by Bertrand du Gueſclin, and, I ſuppoſe, was then at Paris. Froiſſart, I ſhould imagine, by mentioning *outre la Somme*, muſt mean a different perſon, one who had an eſtate beyond the Somme. In the MS. collections of mr. Anſtis, a ſir Otho Grantſon is ſpoken of; but, by a reference to Dugdale, it appears he muſt have lived in a much earlier period.

Guiſcrd

Guiſcard d'Angle and his companions were gone to England to requeſt from the king an able leader. He already knew that the earl of Pembroke had the appointment, and that he was on his way thither. Upon which, the king of France had ſecretly raiſed a large naval armament; that is to ſay, it had been done at his requeſt, for it belonged to king Henry of Caſtille, who had ſent this armament in conformity to the treaty which had been lately concluded between them. This Spaniſh fleet conſiſted of forty large veſſels and thirteen barks, well provided with towers and ramparts, as the Spaniſh ſhips uſually are. Four valiant men were the commanders of this fleet: Ambroſio de Balequer, Cabeſſo de Vaccadent, Hernando de Léon, Rodrigo de Roſas*.

Theſe Spaniards had remained a conſiderable time at anchor, waiting for the return of the Poitevins, and the coming of the earl of Pembroke; for they were well informed that he was to land on the coaſt of Poitou, and had therefore placed themſelves at anchor before the town of la Rochelle.

It happened, therefore, that on the day preceding the vigil of St. John the Baptiſt, in the

* I have copied the names of theſe Spaniſh captains from Barnes, but am doubtful if they are right; for in Choiſi's hiſt. of Charles V. *Rodrique de Roux* is mentioned as admiral. In Villaret's hiſt. of France, *Boccanera* is called the admiral. Indeed, this is nearer to Froiſſart, who calls the firſt captain Ambrois de *Boucquenegre*. Barnes gives not any authority for his alterations.

year

year of grace 1372, when the earl of Pembroke and his fleet expected to enter the port of la Rochelle, they found that the Spaniards had blocked up the entrance by lying before its mouth, and were ready prepared to receive them. When the Engliſh and Poitevins ſaw the Spaniards thus poſted, and that an engagement muſt happen, they encouraged each other, though they were not near an equal match, either in regard to the number of veſſels or men, and made preparations for an immediate combat, poſting their archers on the bows of the ſhips.

The Spaniards were well equipped with menat arms and foot ſoldiers, who had croſs-bows and cannons: many had alſo large bars of iron, and ſtaves loaded with lead, to make their attacks with. They advanced with ſhoutings and a great noiſe. Theſe large ſhips of Spain made ſail to gain the wind, ſo that they might bring their towers to bear on the Engliſh, who little ſuſpected their intent, and leſs feared them. Thus did they bear down on them full ſail. At this commencement, great were the ſhouts and cries on both ſides. The Engliſh behaved gallantly, and the earl of Pembroke, his knights and ſquires, acted worthy of their honour.

The engagement was very ſevere, and the Engliſh had enough to do; for the Spaniards who were in large veſſels had great bars of iron and huge ſtones, which they launched and flung from their ſhips in order to ſink thoſe of the Engliſh, by which they wounded deſperately both ſailors and men at arms.

The

The knights of England and Poitou that day ſhewed excellent proofs of chivalry and proweſs. The earl fought gallantly, ſeeking his enemies every where, and did extraordinary feats of arms. Sir Otho de Grantſon, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, the lord de Pinane and all the other knights behaved equally well.

CHAP. XXXV.

THE INHABITANTS OF LA ROCHELLE REFUSE TO ASSIST THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.—THE SENESCHAL AND THE LORD DE TANNY-BOUTON, WITH OTHERS, COME TO HIS AID.

BY what I have heard from thoſe who were preſent at this engagement, the Engliſh and Poitevins ſhewed plainly they wiſhed for victory, and obtained great praiſe for their valour; for never people exerted more courage, nor fought more bravely, conſidering what a handful of men they were in compariſon with the Spaniards, and in ſuch ſmall veſſels that one cannot but marvel how it laſted ſo long: but their great proweſs and chivalry raiſed a mutual ſpirit of emulation, and, had their veſſels been of the ſame ſize with their enemy's, the Spaniards would not have had the advantage; for they handled their ſpears, which were well ſteeled, ſo briſkly, and gave ſuch terrible ſtrokes,

ſtrokes, that none dared to come near unleſs he were well armed and ſhielded; but the ſhowers of ſtones, lead and iron bars annoyed them exceedingly, and in this firſt engagement ſeveral knights and ſquires were ſeverely wounded.

The Rochellers ſaw plainly the whole of this engagement, but never offered to advance to the aſſiſtance of their countrymen, leaving them to ſhift for themſelves. This battle laſted until night, when each party ſeparated and caſt their ancohrs: but the Engliſh loſt two barges of proviſion, and all thoſe in them were ſlain.

Sir John Harpedon, who at that time was ſénéſchal of la Rochelle, employed himſelf all the night in entreating the inhabitants, the mayor, John Chauderon, and the others to arm themſelves, and to draw out the commonalty, and embark in the veſſels and barges which were lying on the ſhore, in order to aſſiſt and aid their fellow-ſubjects whom they had ſeen ſo valorouſly defend themſelves. The inhabitants, however, who had no inclination ſo to do, excuſed themſelves by ſaying they had their town to guard; that they were not ſeamen, nor accuſtomed to fight at ſea, nor with the Spaniards; but that, if the battle had been on ſhore, they would very willingly have complied with his requeſt. The buſineſs remained in this ſtate, and nothing could bring them to change their reſolution.

At this moment there were in la Rochelle the lord de Tannybouton, ſir James de Surgeres and ſir Maubrun de Linieres, who handſomely acquitted

quitted themſelves in joining their entreaties with thoſe of the ſénéſchal. When theſe four knights ſaw they could not gain any thing, they armed themſelves, ordering their people, who were not in any great numbers, to do the ſame; and, on the return of the tide, they embarked in four boats which they took from the ſhore, at break of day, and made for the veſſels of their friends, who were right glad to ſee them. They told the earl of Pembroke and ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, that they muſt not expect any aſſiſtance from la Rochelle, as the townſmen had poſitively refuſed it; to which, as they could not better themſelves, they replied that they truſted in the mercy of God, and would wait the event; that a time might come when the Rochellers ſhould repent of their refuſal.

CHAP. XXXVI.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE IS DEFEATED, AND MADE PRISONER BY THE SPANIARDS.—THEY SAIL FROM LA ROCHELLE WITH THEIR PRISONERS.—THE CAPTAL DE BUCH ARRIVES THERE, BUT TOO LATE.

WHEN it was day, and the tide had flowed full, the Spaniards weighed their anchors, and, with a great noiſe of trumpets and drums, formed

formed a line of battle, like to that of the preceding day, with their large veſſels, which were well manned and armed; and having gained the wind in hopes of incloſing the Engliſh veſſels, which were but few in compariſon, the before mentioned four captains led the van in handſome order.

The Engliſh and Poitevins, obſerving their line of battle, formed theirs accordingly, and, having collected themſelves together, placed their archers in front. The Spaniards, under the command of theſe captains, bore down on them full ſail, and began the engagement, which was dreadfully deadly. When they came to cloſe quarters, the Spaniards flung out grappling hooks with chains of iron, which laſhed the Engliſh to their veſſels, ſo that they could not ſeparate, and thus, as it were, held them cloſe*.

With the earl of Pembroke there were twenty-two knights, who united good inclinations to tried valour, and who vigorouſly defended themſelves with ſpears, ſwords and other weapons. They remained there cloſely engaged, fighting deſperately, for a conſiderable time; but the Spaniards had too much the advantage, as their veſſels were larger and higher above the water than thoſe of the Engliſh, from which they flung down ſtones, bars of iron and lead, that much annoyed their ad-

* The Memoires de du Gueſclin ſay, that fire ſhips were firſt uſed in this engagement by the Spaniards, and that by their means thirteen of the largeſt Engliſh ſhips were deſtroyed. *Coll. Memoires Hiſtoriques*, vol. i. p. 432.

verſaries,

verſaries. The engagement continued with great fury between them until near nine o'clock; and no people ever laboured harder than the Engliſh and Poitevins, but the greater part of their men were now wounded by the ſtones and other things which were thrown on them, and that gallant knight of Gaſcony ſir Aimery de Tarbe was ſlain, as well as ſir John Lauton, who was knight of the body to the earl of Pembroke.

Four large Spaniſh ſhips had grappled with that in which was the earl: they were commanded by Cabeſſo de Vaccadent and Hernando de Léon, and full of men at arms for the combat and to work the veſſels. After an obſtinate reſiſtance, they boarded the earl's ſhip, when he was made priſoner, and all on board ſlain or taken. Among the laſt were, ſir Robert Beaufort, ſir John Curzon, ſir John Grimſtone: ſir Simon Whitaker, ſir John Morton and ſir John Touchet ſhared the fate of the firſt.

At ſome diſtance, the Poitevins, under the command of ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, the lord de Pinane, the lord de Tannaybouton and other knights, with their followers, continued the fight; aad in another ſhip ſir Otho de Grantſon was engaged againſt Ambroiſe de Boccanera and Roderigo de Roſas, who were too many for him; ſo that all theſe knights were taken by the Spaniards, not one eſcaped being killed or made priſoner. Their men were alſo in great danger, but their lords, when taken, deſired they would ceaſe the ſlaughter, as they would pay a proper ranſom for them.

Whoever may find himſelf in ſuch a ſtrait of arms as the earl of Pembroke or ſir Guiſcard d'Angle were in, before la Rochelle, muſt cheerfully ſubmit to whatever God or fortune may pleaſe to order. But know, that in the loſs of this day, of knights or ſquires, the king of England in compariſon was by far the greateſt ſufferer; for, in conſequence of this defeat, he loſt afterwards all Guienne, as you will have related in this hiſtory.

I was informed that the Engliſh veſſel which had on board the money for ſir Guiſcard d'Angle to pay the ſoldiers of Guienne was loſt, and every thing on board with it; ſo that it was not of profit to any one.

All this day, which was the vigil of St. John the Baptiſt, the enſuing night, and the morrow until noon, did the Spaniards remain at anchor before la Rochelle, ſhouting and rioting with joy.

It happened fortunately that a knight of Poitou, called ſir James de Surgeres, addreſſed the perſon who had taken him with ſo much eloquence that he agreed to give him his liberty for three hundred francs, which he paid down. He dined in la Rochelle on St. John's day; and by him it was known how the affair had ended, who were ſlain or made priſoners. Many citizens of the town pretended to be much concerned at this event, though in their hearts they rejoiced, for they never were well inclined towards the Engliſh.

In the afternoon of St. John's day, at high flood, the Spaniards weighed anchor, ſet their ſails,

ſails, and departed with a great noiſe of drums and trumpets. They had on their maſt-heads ſtandards like to pennons, with the arms of Caſtille diſplayed on them, and of ſuch a length that their ends frequently touched the ſea. It was a fine ſight to ſee them thus ſail off, as they ſteered for the coaſt of Galicia.

In this ſame day, towards the evening, there came into la Rochelle a large body of men at arms, Gaſcons and Engliſh, who had not heard what had paſſed, but they knew that the Spaniards were lying before the town, and had done ſo for ſome time: they came, therefore, to reinforce it. The leaders of the Gaſcons were, the captal de Buch, ſir Beras de la Lande, ſir Peter de Landura, the ſouldich, ſir Bertrand du Trane: of the Engliſh, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir William Farrington, the earl of Angus, ſir Baldwin Freville*, ſir Walter Hewet and ſir John Devereux†.

When theſe lords and their troops, which were full ſix hundred men, were arrived in la Rochelle, the inhabitants made appearance of being very glad to ſee them, for they dared not do otherwiſe. They learnt from ſir James de Surgeres the event of the

* Sir Baldwin Freville—had ſummons to parliament the 1ſt Edward III. See Dugdale. He was competitor for the office of champion at the coronation of Richard II. but the earl marſhal decided on the ſuperior claim of the Dymocks.—See Dugdale's Warwickſhire, where the pedigree is.

† Sir John Devereux. See Dugdale. From him are deſcended the viſcounts Hereford, &c.

battle with the Spaniards, and the names of thoſe killed and taken. The barons and knights were ſorely afflicted at this news, and thought themſelves more unfortunate than they had ever yet been for not arriving ſooner. They regretted much the loſs of the earl of Pembroke and ſir Guiſcard d'Angle. I know not how many days they remained in la Rochelle, to conſider what would be the beſt manner for them to conduct themſelves, and whither they ſhould march. We will leave them for a while, and ſpeak of Evan of Wales, and of his exploits this ſeaſon.

CHAP. XXXVII.

EVAN OF WALES * DEFEATS THE ENGLISH OFF THE ISLAND OF GUERNSEY.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS HIM TO SPAIN TO SEEK FOR MEN AT ARMS, TO LAY SIEGE TO LA ROCHELLE.

EVAN of Wales was the ſon of a prince of Wales, whom king Edward, for ſome reaſon I am ignorant of, had put to death, and ſeized his territories

* Among the members of the council of war whom du Gueſclin called, before he attacked St. Maure ſur Loire, are Carenlouet capitaine de la Roche-poſay, Ivain de Galles, and another knight called the Pourſuivant d'Amours.—Note 83d in the ſame

territories and principality, which he had given to his ſon the prince of Wales. Evan went to France to lay his complaints before king Charles of the injuries he had ſuffered from the king of England by the death of his father and the ſeizure of his inheritance.

The king of France had retained him in his ſervice, and much advanced him, by giving him the command of a large body of men at arms. In this ſummer, he ſent him to ſea with four thouſand fighting men, with whom he acquitted himſelf much to his honour, as you ſhall now hear.

When he took command of theſe men at arms, and veſſels which the king of France had equipped and provided for him, he embarked in the port of Harfleur, and ſet full ſail for England, making the iſland of Guernſey, which lies oppoſite to Normandy. Edmund Roſs, ſquire of honour to the king of England, was then governor of that iſland.

On hearing of the arrival of the French under the command of Evan, he was much angered, and advanced out to meet him. He iſſued his ſummons throughout the iſland, which is not large, and collected, as well of his own men as of the iſlanders, about eight hundred, with whom he

---

ſame vol. ſays, 'This famous Pourſuivant d'Amours was alſo called le chevalier Bauwen.' Moſt probably a Welſhman of the name of Bowen?: but how is this to be reconciled with the preceding quotations?—See Memoires du Gueſclin, vol. iv. of the Hiſtorical Collection of French Memoirs, p. 397.

gave battle. It was ſharp and long; but the Engliſh, at laſt, were defeated, leaving upwards of four hundred dead on the field. Edmund was forced to fly, otherwiſe he muſt have been ſlain or taken. He eſcaped with great difficulty and ſaved himſelf in a handſome caſtle, called Cornet, ſituated at the diſtance of two leagues from the place where the battle had been fought, and which he had beforehand provided with every thing neceſſary for ſuch a fortreſs.

After this defeat, Evan, having collected his army, and hearing that Edmund had retreated into Cornet caſtle, advanced thither, and inveſted it cloſely, giving frequent aſſaults; but the caſtle was ſtrong and well provided with artillery, ſo that the French could not gain it.

It was during the time of this ſiege the unfortunate defeat and capture of the earl of Pembroke and ſir Guiſcard d'Angle happened before la Rochelle, which has been juſt related.

The king of France, when he heard of the ſucceſs of the Spaniards, was exceedingly rejoiced, and paid more attention than ever to the affairs of Poitou; for he thought perhaps lightly enough, that if the Engliſh ſhould have a few more ſuch defeats, the cities and principal towns would willingly ſurrender to him. He therefore determined, with the advice of his council, to ſend the conſtable and all his men at arms into Poitou, Xainſongeand the Rochellois, in order to carry on the war more briſkly by ſea and land, whilſt the Engliſh

Engliſh party ſhould be without a leader, for the whole country was wavering in its allegiance.

He therefore ſent meſſengers to Evan of Wales, who was lying before Cornet caſtle, as he was perfectly acquainted with the ſtate of it, and knew it to be impregnable, ordering him inſtantly to break up the ſiege, and put to ſea in a veſſel equipped for him, and to make ſail for Spain to prevail on king Henry to grant him boats and galleys, with his admirals and men at arms, to blockade la Rochelle.

Evan, on receiving the meſſengers with the king's orders, promptly obeyed them, as was right; broke up the ſiege, and diſbanded his men, lending them veſſels to carry them to Harfleur. He himſelf immediately embarked on board a large ſhip, and made ſail for Spain. Thus was the ſiege of Cornet caſtle raiſed.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE KING OF ENGLAND IS MUCH CAST DOWN AT THE CAPTURE OF THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.—EVAN OF WALES MEETS THE EARL A PRISONER IN SPAIN.

YOU muſt know, that when the king of England heard of the defeat of the armament he had ſent to Poitou, and that it had been overcome by the Spaniards, he was greatly afflicted; ſo were all thoſe who were attached to him; but for the moment he could not amend it. The wiſeſt in the kingdom imagined that this unfortunate buſineſs would cauſe the loſs of the countries of Poitou and Saintonge; and they ſtated this as their opinion to the king and duke of Lancaſter. They held many councils upon it. The earl of Saliſbury was ordered thither with five hundred men at arms. However, notwithſtanding this order, he never went; for other affairs came into agitation reſpecting Brittany, which prevented it from taking place. The king repented of this afterwards, when it was too late.

The Spaniards who had taken the earl of Pembroke and his companions were detained ſome little time at ſea by contrary winds. They arrived at the port of St. Andero in Biſcay, and entered the town about mid-day, when they conducted their priſoners to a ſtrong caſtle, and faſtened them with

with iron chains according to their uſual cuſtom; for the Spaniards know not how to ſhew courteſy to their priſoners, but act like the Germans.

Evan * of Wales had the ſame day arrived with his ſhip at St. Andero, and had entered the hôtel where don Fernando de Roſas and Cabeſſo de Vaccadent had conducted the earl of Pembroke and his knights. This was told to Evan in his apartment, ſaying; 'Sir, come and ſee the Engliſh knights whom our people have made priſoners, they will enter this hôtel, for it is not long ſince they arrived.' Evan being very deſirous of ſeeing them, to know who they were, went out. He met, on quitting his chamber, in the apartment of the landlord, the earl of Pembroke, whom he directly recognized, though he had ſcarcely ever ſeen him before. He addreſſed him in a reproachful manner: 'Earl Pembroke, are you come into this country to do me homage for the lands you hold of me in the principality of Wales, of which I am the heir, and which your king has deprived me of, through the advice of evil counſellors?'

The earl of Pembroke was much diſpleaſed and aſhamed, feeling himſelf a priſoner in a ſtrange country, to be thus apoſtrophiſed in his own language by one whom he did not know, and replied, 'Who are you that you addreſs me in ſuch words?'

* By every thing I can find, this Evan was an impoſtor.—Llewelyn, the laſt prince of Wales, was treacherouſly ſlain, near Builth, in Edward I.'s reign. Probably the king of France knew this, but employed him in hopes of his aſſiſtance againſt England.—Sea Barnes and others.

Evan

Evan anſwered, 'I am Evan, ſon and heir of prince Edmund of Wales, whom your king wickedly and wrongfully put to death, and diſinherited me afterwards. But I may perhaps be able, through the aſſiſtance of my very dear lord the king of France, to apply a remedy to this, and I will certainly then do ſo. I wiſh you to know, that if I can meet you in a proper place and time to offer you combat, I will ſhew you the wrongs you have done me, as well as the earl of Hereford and Edward Spencer; for by your father and other evil counſellors was my lord and father betrayed, which ought to anger me, and I will be revenged of it whenever I may have an opportunity.'

Sir Thomas St. Aubin, who was one of the earl's knights, ſtepped forward and eagerly ſaid; 'Evan, if you mean to ſay and maintain, that my lord has now, or at any other time, committed a diſhonourable act, or that my lord his father has done ſo, or that he owes you any homage or any thing elſe, throw down you glove and you will find one ready enough to take it up.' Evan replied; 'You are a priſoner: I ſhall gain no honour in calling you out, for you are not your own maſter, but belong to thoſe who have taken you: but when you have gained your liberty, I ſhall ſpeak out more boldly, for things ſhall not remain as they now are.'

As he finiſhed theſe words, ſome knights and Spaniſh men of valour got between them, and ſeparated them. The four admirals did not, after this, make any long ſtay, but led their priſoners

to

to Burgos, to deliver them up to the king of Spain; who at that time reſided there.

When the king heard of their coming, and that they were near to Burgos, he ſent his eldeſt ſon, John, who was called the Infanta of Caſtille, attended by a large company of knights and ſquires, to meet and to do them honour; for king Henry knew well that it became him ſo to act; and he himſelf paid them much attention, as ſoon as they were come into his preſence. Shortly after, the king iſſued out his orders, when they were ſent to different places in the kingdom of Caſtille.

CHAP. XXXIX.

THE CONSTABLE DU GUESCLIN TAKES THE CASTLE OF MONMORILLON*, AND OTHER PLACES IN POITOU.

WE will return to the affairs of Poitou, which at that time were not trifling matters, and ſay how thoſe knights from England and Gaſcony acted who had come into la Rochelle at the feaſt of St. John the Baptiſt, as has been before related. They were exceedingly vexed they had not arrived there the preceding day, and been in time

* Monmorillon,—a town in Poitou, eleven leagues from Poitiers.

for

for the Spaniards. They held long councils how they ſhould act, and which way they ſhould advance, for they already had their ſuſpicions of the loyalty of the Rochellers. They appointed ſir John Devereux ſénéſchal of la Rochelle, with three hundred men at arms for the defence of the caſtle, for as long as they ſhould be maſters of that, the town dared not to rebel. This buſineſs done, the captal de Buch, who commanded the expedition, lord Thomas Percy, the earl of Angus, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, the ſouldich, ſir Beras de la Lande, and the others, with their men, marched from la Rochelle. About four hundred lances took the road for Soubiſe*; for there were ſome Bretons near that place, who having taken poſſeſſion of ſeveral churches and ſmall forts, had fortified them: but as ſoon as theſe lords approached they fled, and the country was freed of ſuch viſitors.

At this time, the conſtable of France, the dukes of Berry and Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the lord Louis de Sancerre, the lords de Cliſſon and de Laval, the viſcount de Rohan, the lord de Beaumanoir, and numbers of the barons of France, had taken the field, and were with the army in the countries of Anjou, Auvergne and Berry: in all, upwards of three thouſand ſpears.

Thoſe lords who were under the immediate command of the conſtable advanced into Poitou,

* Soubiſe,—a town in Saintonge, ſix leagues from la Rochelle.

where

where they kept in a body, and then proceeded to lay ſiege to a caſtle called Monmorillon. On their arrival, they aſſaulted it briſkly and gained it, putting all within to the ſword. They reinforced it with another garriſon.

They then marched to Chauvigny *, on the river Creuſe, and beſieged it. They remained there two days, but on the third it ſurrendered, and the garriſon were ſpared. They continued their march towards Luſſac†, where there is a town and caſtle, which ſurrendered immediately without waiting the aſſault. They advanced towards the city of Poitiers, and lay one night in the vineyards, which very much alarmed the city, as they were fearful of being beſieged; but for this time they were free, for they marched off the following day, advancing towards Moncontour. John Creſswell and David Hollegrave commanded in the place, and had under them about ſixty good companions, bold and hardy, who had very much haraſſed the ſurrounding countries of Anjou and Touraine, as well as all the French garriſons, ſo that the conſtable declared he would not undertake any thing before he had gained this town.

---

* Chauvigny,—ſix leagues from Poitiers.

† Luſſac,—near Monmorillon.

CHAP. XL.

THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE TAKES MONCONTOUR BY A CAPITULATION.—HE MARCHES FROM THENCE TO FORM A JUNCTION WITH THE DUKE OF BERRY IN THE LIMOUSIN, WHEN THEY LAY SIEGE TO ST. SEVERE.

THE conſtable of France, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the lord de Cliſſon, the viſcount de Rohan, the lords de Laval, de Beaumanoir and de Sully, with the others, advanced until they came before Moncontour, a handſome caſtle, ſix leagues from Poitiers. On their arrival, they began the ſiege, and made different aſſaults in good order; but, as the ditches were very deep round the walls, they could not eaſily approach. They ordered the peaſants to cut timber and faggots which they cauſed to be drawn and thrown into them, and afterwards covered with ſtraw and earth. Four days were taken up in doing this. When they had completed it, they began their attacks in earneſt, and in a regular way. Thoſe within defended themſelves well, for they were maſters of their profeſſion; and they ſuſtained the aſſault one whole day, when they had hard fighting, and were in great danger of being taken. On the ſixth, the conſtable advanced himſelf with his Bretons in regular order, to make a fiercer aſſault than any of

of the former ones. Being covered with large ſhields, and armed with pick-axes and mattocks, they came up cloſe to the walls, which they immediately battered, pulling out ſtones in various places, inſomuch that the garriſon began to be alarmed: they, however, defended themſelves as well as ever garriſon did.

John Creſswell and David Hollegrave, the governors, ſaw the peril they were in, and gueſſed that ſir Bertrand, from this manner of proceeding, would not quit the place before he had conquered it; ſo that, ſhould they be taken by aſſault, they would certainly be put to death; and, not ſeing nor hearing of any ſuccour coming to them, they opened a treaty to ſurrender the place, on their lives being ſpared.

The conſtable, who did not wiſh to harraſs his own people, nor to puſh too far the garriſon, whom he knew to be reſolute men at arms, accepted the terms, and agreed they ſhould leave the caſtle, taking nothing with them but gold or ſilver, and that they ſhould be eſcorted to Poitiers.

In this manner did the conſtable get the caſtle of Moncontour, of which he took poſſeſſion, and had it well repaired. He remained in it to refreſh himſelf and men, for he was not determined whither he ſhould march next, to Poitiers or elſewhere.

When the news was known in the city of Poitiers, that the conſtable and his Bretons had retaken the caſtle of Moncontour, they were more alarmed than before, and immediately ſent off meſ-

ſengers

ſengers to lord Thomas Percy, their ſénéſchal, who was on the expedition with the captal de Buch.

At the ſame time that lord Thomas Percy received this information, ſir John Devereux, who reſided in the caſtle of la Rochelle, was told that the conſtable of France, having encamped before Poitiers, had reconnoitred the place, and that the inhabitants were the more afraid he would beſiege it becauſe their ſénéſchal was abſent. Sir John did not hear this intelligence with indifference, but ſet about to aid and comfort the Poitevins: he marched from la Rochelle, with only fifty lances, having appointed, on his departure, one of his ſquires, named Philip Manſel, governor of the caſtle until his return. He took the road to Poitiers, which he entered; and the cittzens teſtified their obligations to him for it.

The principal citizens who brought the news from Poitiers to lord Thomas Percy, ſerving in the captal's army, begged of him to haſten thither: and as they expected an immediate ſiege, to bring with him as ſtrong a force as he could, for the French army was very conſiderable. On hearing this, lord Thomas explained the buſineſs to the captal, to know what he would ſay to it. The captal, having conſidered it, was unwilling to break up his expedition, but gave lord Thomas Percy leave to go there: he ſet off, and on his arrival in Poitiers was received with great joy by the inhabitants, who were very deſirous of having him among them. He found ſir John Devereux there, and great

great feaſtings and rejoicings were made on the occaſion.

All this was known to the conſtable, who had continued in Moncontour, and alſo that Poitiers had been reinforced with a body of men at arms. At the ſame time he heard from the duke of Berry, who commanded a large army in Auvergne, Berry, and Burgundy upon the borders of Limouſin, that he was deſirous of laying ſiege to St. Severe*; which town belonged to ſir John Devereux, but was garriſoned, under his orders, by ſir William Percy, Richard Gill and Richard Orme, and a large body of men at arms, who had overrun the countries of Auvergne and Limouſin, doing much miſchief to both of them. The duke of Berry, on this account, wiſhed to march thither, and therefore entreated the conſtable, if he had not any other views, that he would join him before St. Severe.

The conſtable, who was very wiſe, prudent and inventive in all his undertakings, conſidered that at that moment he could not expect ſucceſs before Poitiers, even if he were to march his men thither; for the city had been greatly reinforced with men at arms: he therefore declared he would join the duke of Berry. He ſet out from Moncontour with his whole army after he had appointed a garriſon to defend it, and joined the duke, who thanked him much for coming, as well as all his knights and

* St. Severe,—a town in Saintonge, near Saintes.

ſquires. When this junction was formed, there was plenty of men at arms,

The duke of Berry, in company with the conſtable, reconnoitred St. Severe: their force was about four thouſand men at arms: they directly laid ſiege to the place, declaring they would not depart until they had poſſeſſion of it. They began the ſiege with great vigour, and ſir William Percy and his companions defended themſelves equally well.

News was brought to ſir John Devereux in the city of Poitiers, how the duke of Berry, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the conſtable of France, the lord de Cliſſon, the viſcount de Rohan, with four thouſand men at arms, were beſieging his caſtle of St. Severe.

He was very penſive on hearing this, and ſpoke to lord Thomas Percy, who was preſent when the intelligence came: 'Lord Thomas, you are ſénéſchal of this country, and have ſufficient influence and power to do what I am about to requeſt of you; which is, that you would adviſe and aſſiſt me in ſuccouring my people, for unleſs they are reinforced they muſt be taken by aſſault.'

'By my faith,' replied lord Thomas, 'I have every inclination and good wiſh to aſſiſt you: and through love to you, I will ſet out, and ſpeak to my lord the captal de Buch, who is not far diſtant. I will do all in my power to induce him to accompany us, to raiſe the ſiege, and to offer battle to the French.'

They

They immediately ſet out from Poitiers, leaving the city under the guard of the mayor of the place, whoſe name was John Regnault, a good and loyal man. Theſe knights rode until they met the captal de Buch, in the plain, advancing towards St. Jean d'Angely. They remonſtrated with him, in a courteous manner, how the French had taken Monmorillon, near Poitiers, as well as the ſtrong caſtle of Moncontour; and that they were now employed at the ſiege of St. Severe, which belonged to ſir John Devereux, to whom certainly ſome good ſervices were due. Beſides, there were ſhut up in the caſtle, ſir William Percy, Richard Gill and Richard Orme, who were too valiant men to be loſt.

The captal de Buch, having conſidered a moment, replied, 'Gentlemen, what is it you wiſh me to do?' Some knights who were near had been called to this council, and they replied; 'It is now a long time ſince we have heard you expreſs a ſtrong deſire for an opportunity of fighting with the French, you can never find a more favourable one than by haſtening to St. Severe; and, if you will iſſue your ſummons to Anjou and Poitou, we ſhall have a ſufficient number to combat the French with the good will we have to meet with them.' 'By my faith,' anſwered the captal, 'I wiſh nothing better; and we will ſoon meaſure our ſtrength with theirs, if it pleaſe God and my lord St. George.'

The captal immediately iſſued his ſummons to all barons, knights and ſquires of Poitou and

Saintonge attached to the Engliſh, entreating and enjoining them ſtrictly to meet him, at a certain fixed place, armed and prepared in the beſt manner they could.

Every knight and ſquire who received theſe letters made all poſſible diſpatch to make himſelf ready, and took the field to meet the captal as ſpeedily as he could. Among the principal were, the lord de Partenay, ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Hugh de Vinoue, ſir Thomas his brother, ſir Percival de Coulonge, ſir Aimery de la Rochechouart, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, the lords de Puiſſances, de Rouſſillon, de Crupenac, ſir John d'Angle, ſir William de Montendre, and many other barons and knights; ſo that they muſtered full nine hundred lances and five hundred archers.

CHAP. XLI.

THE GARRISON OF ST. SEVERE, AFTER A SHARP ASSAULT, SURRENDERS TO SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN.—THE CITY OF POITIERS TURNS TO THE FRENCH PARTY.

INTELLIGENCE was brought to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin and the army before St. Severe, that the Engliſh, Poitevins and their allies were faſt approaching with a great force, in order to oblige them to raiſe the ſiege.

When the conſtable heard of this, he was no way alarmed, but ordered every one to arm and

to

to march directly to the aſſault. No one diſobeyed this command, but French and Bretons advanced to the fort armed and well covered by their ſhields, when they began a vigorous attack, each lord under his own banner and ſurrounded by his people. It was a handſome ſight to look at, for at this aſſault there were forty-nine banners, and numbers of pennons. The conſtable, and the marſhal lord Louis de Sancerre were there at their proper poſts, labouring hard to encourage the men to conduct their attack with greater valour. Knights and ſquires of all nations were eager to gain honour and advancement, and performed many gallant exploits. Several croſſed the ditches, which were full of water, with their ſhields on their heads, and marched up to the walls. In doing this, they never retreated, notwithſtanding the things which were thrown down on them, but advanced the nearer to the fort. The dukes of Berry and Bourbon, the count d'Alençon and the dauphin d'Auvergne, with ſeveral other great lords, were on the ditch encouraging their men, who, on account of ſuch ſpectators, advanced boldly, fearleſs of death and danger.

Sir William Percy and the two ſquires of honour, who were governors of the caſtle, perceiving how briſkly the attacks were made, and that they never cooled nor ceaſed, were ſenſible, that, if it thus continued, they could not long reſiſt, and, according to their imagination, no aid was coming to them from any part; for, if they had ſuſpected that a reinforcement was within ten leagues, they

would have taken courage, and have held out until they ſhould have been relieved: but, being ignorant of this, they opened a treaty with the conſtable, to avoid further loſs. Sir Bertrand, who had had certain intelligence that before evening he ſhould ſee or hear of the Engliſh, eagerly concluded the negociation, granting them their lives: on which he made great rejoicings.

He then ordered the army to march into the plain, and draw up in order of battle, ſaying to the chief commanders; 'Gentlemen, look to yourſelves, for the enemy is advancing, and I hope that we may have a battle before night.' Each made ready, upon hearing this, as well for the attack as to defend himſelf.

The Engliſh, however, were in no hurry to march further, when they learnt for certain that St. Severe was taken. We will, therefore, ſpeak of what was paſſing in Poitiers.

At this time there were great diſſentions in Poitiers, for three parts of the town wiſhed to turn to the French; but John Regnault, the mayor, and a part of the commonalty, wanted to remain with the Engliſh. Notwithſtanding this, the richeſt citizens and the churchmen, of whom there were there plenty, would, whatever might be the conſequences, have the conſtable ſent for: indeed they ſecretly adviſed him to make haſte and take poſſeſſion of the city, for on his approach they would open to him the gates.

The conſtable was much rejoiced, and told it to the dukes of Berry and of Bourbon, who determined

mined that he ſhould leave the army with three hundred men at arms, mounted on the fleeteſt courſers they had. They rode that day and the following night, with ſcarcely any repoſe, upwards of thirty leagues by another road than that the Engliſh had taken, and by day-break arrived at Poitiers. They found the gates ready opened, and their party prepared to receive them. Had they but delayed one half hour, they would have loſt the opportunity; for John Regnault and his friends, having learnt the intention of the others, had ſent off in great haſte to ſir John Devereux and lord Thomas Percy, who, with a hundred ſpears and as many archers, were within one ſhort league of the city.

The barons and knights of Poitou were thunderſtruck at the capture of Poitiers, as well as thoſe from Gaſcony and England, who were collected in Poitou, to the amount of eight hundred lances and four hundred archers.

They called a council to conſider in what manner they ſhould act, for they ſaw themſelves in great difficulties, and were doubtful in whom they could put confidence. The barons and knights of Poitou therefore, the better to re-aſſure the Engliſh, thus addreſſed them: 'Certainly, gentlemen, it is exceedingly diſagreeable for us to ſee the affairs of this country in ſuch a ſtate that we cannot bring any remedy to them; but depend upon it, that as long as we exiſt, and there ſhall remain any houſe or fort in Poitou to receive us, we will

always remain ſteadily and loyally attached to our natural lord the king of England and to you.'

The Engliſh knights replied, 'We place our entire confidence in you, and you will find in us companions and friends to death.' There were very long debates, when it was at laſt reſolved, that the Poitevins ſhould march off one way, and the Engliſh to a different quarter. They parted from each other in the moſt amicable manner; that is to ſay, the lord de Partenay, the lords de Thouars and de Rouſſillon, ſir Aimery de la Rochechouart, ſir John d'Angle, ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Percival de Coulogne governor of Thouars, Hugh de Brionne, Reginald de Thouars, William de Crupenac, James de Surgeres, and other knights and ſquires of Poitou, who took the road to Thouars. The Engliſh, ſuch as ſir John Devereux, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, the earl of Angus, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, ſir Matthew Foulkes, ſir Thomas Gournay, ſir Walter Hewett, ſir John Creſwell and others, took the road to Niort, which they intended to enter without halting; but, when they arrived there, they found the gates ſhut and the draw-bridge raiſed, and were told by the inhabitants they ſhould not have admittance.

The Engliſh lords immediately called a council, and declared ſuch an inſult was not to be ſuffered: they drew up in good array, and attacked the town with great courage, which was defended by the inhabitants: but there was not any gentleman or knight within it to order or lead them, only mechanics,

chanics, who knew not what it was to make war: ſo they were conquered by the Engliſh. Could they have held out until veſpers, they would have been aſſiſted, for the conſtable had ordered Thibaut du Pons, with two hundred combatants, to reinforce the garriſon. They did not, however, arrive in time, for the town was taken by aſſault, and pillaged, while men and women were promiſcuouſly put to the ſword.

The Engliſh took up their quarters in Niort, waiting for intelligence.

CHAP. XLII.

THE FRENCH MAKE THE CAPTAL DE BUCH PRISONER.—LA ROCHELLE TURNS TO THE FRENCH.

DURING the time the Engliſh were in Niort, from whence, in truth, they were afraid of departing, Evan of Wales, in company with the Spaniſh admiral don Roderigo di Roſas, arrived at la Rochelle with fourteen large ſhips and eight galleys, laden with men at arms and proviſion. They anchored before the town, ſo that nothing could enter or come out without danger of being taken. Upon which the Rochellers, who were wavering, had a ſecret interview with Evan and the

the Spaniſh admiral; and it was agreed mutually not to hurt each other.

The Spaniards and French remained at anchor before la Rochelle; but they had ſpies in the countries of Poitou and Saintonge, to inform them what was going forwards. The governor of la Rochelle was at that time Philip Manſel.

The conſtable of France ſtill continued in Poitiers, but he ſent the lord du Pons and Thibaut du Pons, with three hundred ſpears, including every one, to the caſtle of Soubiſe.

Soubiſe is a very ſtrong caſtle ſituated on the ſea-ſhore, directly at the mouth of the river Charente, where it diſembogues itſelf into the ſea. The lady of Soubiſe was in the caſtle, but had not many men at arms to garriſon it: ſhe therefore directly ſent off a ſquire to John de Grailly, captal de Buch, conſtable of Aquitaine, to aſk for ſuccour, who was at the time in St. Jean d'Angely. He ſent orders for ſir Henry Haye, ſénéſchal of Angoulême, ſir William de Marneil, nephew to the lord Raymond de Marneil, lord Thomas Percy and ſir John Creſswell, to come immediately to St. Jean d'Angely.

Evan of Wales was informed of all the particulars of this ſiege, as well as the aſſembly of St. Jean d'Angely. He therefore picked out four hundred lances of thoſe moſt to be depended upon from his whole army, and, embarking them on board thirteen barges, ſet ſail with ſir James de Montmoy and Morellet his brother. He left the Spaniſh admiral, with the remainder of the armament before

before la Rochelle, and arrived undiſcovered on the oppoſite ſhore to the caſtle of Soubiſe where the lord de Pons was, who knew nothing of this embarkation.

The captal was alſo ignorant of it, as he was collecting his forces in St. Jean d'Angely; for, had he ſuſpected any thing of the ſort, he would have had a larger body of men: but he ſent back a conſiderable number, having alſo left many in St. Jean d'Angely.

He marched with only two hundred lances at the utmoſt, and about night arrived near to the French army and to the caſtle of Soubiſe. They diſmounted on the outſide of a ſmall coppice, to tighten their gloves of mail and regirth their horſes. Having remounted, they diſplayed their banners, daſhing among the French with their ſhouts of war. Many were ſlain and wounded at this onſet, for the French were not on their guard. The lord du Pons and Thibaut du Pons, with ſixty of their principal men, were made priſoners, and the reſt put to flight.

At this moment, Evan of Wales with his forces advanced, having haſtily croſſed the Charente, with torches and other lights, for it was exceedingly dark. Theſe four hundred lances, who were determined men and quite freſh, fell upon the Engliſh and Gaſcons, who thought they had accompliſhed their buſineſs. Many were ſcattered about pillaging, and the knights were attending to their priſoners. They were treated by theſe

new

new comers very roughly, and in a ſhort time completely defeated.

An able ſquire of Vermandois, called Peter Danvilliers*, advanced and came ſo near the captal de Buch that he made him his priſoner by a gallant deed of arms. The captal was, at this period, the knight of Gaſcony attached to England whom the king of France and the Frenchmen wiſhed moſt to gain, for he was a hardy and enterpriſing captain.

Lord Thomas Percy was alſo that day made priſoner by a Welſh prieſt, called David Howel†. Sir Maubrun de Linieres, ſir Henry Haye, and ſeveral other knights and ſquires were taken likewiſe. Sir Walter Hewett, ſir Petiton de Courton, ſir William Farrington and Carmille ‡ eſcaped with great difficulty: they made for the town of Soubiſe, but would have failed of help if the lady had not been on the walls, who had the gate inſtantly opened. They entered the place with ſeveral others.

On the next morning, Evan of Wales ordered all his barges and boats to be drawn up before Soubiſe, on which he made a briſk attack. The

---

* Danvilliers. Froiſſart calls him Pierre Danielles; but I copy from Villaret's hiſt. de France, tom. v. who ſays that Charles V. gave the ſquire twelve hundred livres for the ranſom of the captal, and cites le Treſor de Chartres for the receipt.

† David Howel. Villaret calls him David Honnel. I ſuppoſe it ſhould be David Howel. In thoſe days, it was common for prieſts to engage in war, notwithſtanding their prieſthood.

‡ Carmille. Q.

lord

lord du Pons and ſir Thibaut du Pons, who had been reſcued, aſſaulted it on the oppoſite ſide. The garriſon and town defended themſelves valiantly: but the lady called a council of the knights and barons, as the place was not ſtrong, and could not hold for any time; for ſhe did not, in the preſent ſtate of affairs, expect any ſuccour; and ſent them to negociate with the French.

A treaty was made on ſuch terms that the knights who were in the town might retire in ſafety to Niort, Saintes, Luſignan or whitherſoever they pleaſed; but the lady of Soubiſe was to place herſelf under the obedience of the king of France.

The Engliſh departed from Soubiſe, and were ſafely eſcorted wherever they choſe to go. The French took poſſeſſion of the town and received the fealty of the lady, who ſwore allegiance to the king of France for herſelf and for her dependencies.

Evan of Wales, ſir James de Montmoy, and their men, returned to their boats, carrying with them the captal de Buch, and their other priſoners, to the large fleet, which was lying before la Rochelle.

The lord du Pons and the Bretons haſtened their march toward St. Jean d'Angely, to join the other men at arms whom the conſtable had ſent thither. There were the viſcount de Rohan, the lords de Cliſſon, de Tournemine, de Beaumanoir and de Rochfort, ſir William des Bourdes, ſir Oliver de Mauny, ſir Reginald de Limouſin, ſir Geoffry Ricon, Yvon de Laconnet, Alain de St. Pol, Carſuelle and ſeveral more, who came before the

town

town of St. Jean d'Angely, and made a great ſhow as if they meant to aſſault it. The inhabitants, ſeeing the country was loſt, and their captain taken, at the ſame time not expecting ſuccour from any part, ſurrendered themſelves to the French.

The Bretons then marched towards Angoulême, which turned to the French, as did Taillebourg. They next advanced to Saintes, where they remained two days and two nights; for the governor, ſir William Farrington, ſaid he would not ſurrender ſo eaſily, and made preparations for its defence; but the biſhop of the town, who was a Frenchman, worked upon the citizens ſo far as to induce them to ſeize the governor, and declare they would put him to death if he would not permit them to ſurrender.

Sir William conſented, provided when they treated for themſelves they did ſo for him, and that he ſhould be permitted to march out free. This treaty was accepted, and the French took poſſeſſion of Saintes and its caſtle. Sir William Farrington marched out, and was eſcorted to Bourdeaux.

Evan of Wales ſtill lay before la Rochelle in company with the Spaniſh admiral, don Roderigo de Roſas, with forty large ſhips, thirteen barges and eight galleys. There were many negotiations between them and the citizens; but theſe laſt could not do any thing ſo long as the caſtle was in the hands of the Engliſh. They waited therefore, diſſembling their intentions, until the Engliſh ſhould

ſhould have drawn off the greater part of the garriſon, as they were doing by little and little, and until ſir John Devereux had left it under the command of Phillip Manſel, who had but a hundred companions one with the other.

At this time, a citizen called John Candorier*, mayor of the town, aſſembled a meeting of thoſe that were more inclined to the French than to the Engliſh, and addreſſed them: 'Gentle ſirs, we ſee our neighbours taking part with the French on all ſides of us, and we ſhall ſoon be ſo incloſed that we ſhall not know which way to turn ourſelves, nor even to go out of our town. It would therefore be expedient, as the moment ſeems favourable, to conſider in what manner we may be able to gain poſſeſſion of the caſtle, which has ſo much annoyed and vexed us, for the garriſon is now much weakened. Phillip Manſel is not very crafty. I will therefore tell him I have received orders from the king of England, which command me to arm and muſter all the inhabitants of the town in a place which I will name, but that I muſt know the number of the garriſon as well as the townſmen, ſo that I may be enabled to ſend him an exact account. I will deſire him to march out of the caſtle and make his muſter before me, which I am perſuaded he will do. We will then have provided an ambuſcade among the old ruins, on the outſide of the caſtle, of two hundred companions, who, when the garriſon have

* Candorier. He was called Chaudron before.

marched

marched out, ſhall poſt themſelves between them and the draw-bridge, which will have been let down. We will alſo have a ſufficient force elſewhere, who muſt advance in their front and make them priſoners; by which we ſhall take both caſtle and garriſon, if you, gentlemen, approve of my plan.'

They all replied in the affirmative, and adopted it, appointing the mayor captain of the enterprize.

The mayor, ſhortly afterward, ſent to invite the governor to a grand entertainment, where he met moſt of the principal inhabitants that were in the plot. The converſation ran chiefly on the king of England and his affairs: during which a large packet was brought to the mayor, ſealed with the great ſeal of England, the better to impoſe on Phillip Manſel, who could not read, but knew well the ſeal. The mayor read aloud this letter, putting ſuch words in it as ſuited his purpoſe, but which were not written. He then addreſſed his gueſt: 'Governor, you ſee and hear what the king our lord's commands are to you and me. You muſt make your muſter to-morrow, as we will do ours.' The governor, who but too well believed all he had heard, ſaid he would willingly obey, and with this he took his leave.

During the courſe of the night, the mayor choſe two hundred men, whom he well armed, and before day placed them in ambuſh among the old walls on the outſide of the caſtle. After nine o'clock, the mayor ordered the bells to ring and the

the townſmen to arm themſelves. Soon after, Phillip Manſel armed his garriſon, of ſixty able men, and fit to defend the place. They marched out of the caſtle; but when they had paſſed the draw-bridge, the men who formed the ambuſcade ſallied forth, and poſted themſelves between the Engliſh and the gate.

The garriſon now ſaw they were betrayed, and marched towards the ambuſcade in hopes of regaining the entrance of the caſtle; but at this moment the mayor advanced, with upwards of two thouſand of the inhabitants, ſo that the Engliſh, being attacked in front and rear, were all made priſoners: they ſurrendered, on having their lives ſaved. The caſtle was not yet taken; for the Engliſh had left twelve of their men within, who had ſtrongly cloſed the gate.

The mayor then came up to the governor and his men, and ſaid; 'Gentlemen, attend to what I ſay: if you do not immediately give orders for the caſtle to ſurrender, you may be aſſured we will have you all beheaded at the foot of this bridge.' The Engliſh replied, they would willingly do all in their power, and held ſeveral parleys with thoſe of the caſtle. It was agreed on all ſides, that thoſe who had been made priſoners and the remainder in the caſtle ſhould be embarked on board a ſhip, and conducted by the mayor and burgeſſes to Bourdeaux.

Thus did the Rochellers win their caſtle. When the dukes of Berry, Burgundy, Burbon, the marſhal de Sancerre, the viſcount de Rohan, the

lords de Sully, du Pons, de Cliſſon, de Beaumanoir, and the other barons and knights of France were informed of it, they quitted Berry, Anjou and Limouſin, where they had made their quarters, and took the direct road for Poitiers, where the conſtable reſided. In their march, theſe lords took a town in Poitou called St. Maixant*, which ſurrendered as ſoon as they came before it. The caſtle was taken by aſſault, and all in it put to the ſword. They afterward took the caſtle of Merle, the caſtle of Aunay, and ſeveral other forts in their road.

When they were arrived at Poitiers, they ſent meſſengers to treat with the Rochellers, but they would not open their gates to them. They told the meſſengers, that the inhabitants would not ſurrender themſelves in ſo eaſy a manner; but that if the duke of Berry and the before-mentioned lords were willing to agree, within ſix days to ſend them paſsports to come to Poitiers, they would then declare to them their intentions, and fully explain what they meant to do.

The meſſengers returned, and told what the inhabitants had ſaid.

Paſſports were granted, and ſome of the burgeſſes came to Poitiers, when they declared to the lords that it was their intention to place themſelves under the obedience of the king of France; but that they would not allow of any caſtle, and

* St. Maixant,—in the road between Saintes and Poitiers, 15 leagues from the latter.

the

the preſent one muſt be razed to the ground; that it ſhould be declared, under the king's ſeal, that no other ſhould be erected: that the town of la Rochelle, and country dependant on it, ſhould remain for ever as the particular domain, and under the juriſdiction, of the kings of France, and that it ſhould never be ſevered from it by marriage, peace, or by any other means, whatever fortune may befal the kingdom of France: that the town ſhould be allowed a mint, with liberty to coin florins, and black and white money, with the ſame alloy and form as thoſe of Paris.

The French lords would not agree to theſe terms until the king had conſidered them; and they gave the Rochellers paſſports to wait on him at Paris.

Twelve burgeſſes went to the king, who granted them every thing they had aſked. He entertained them handſomely, and gave them ſeveral rich jewels. When they returned to la Rochelle, they diſplayed their charters, which were ſealed with the king's ſeal, and had been confirmed in the parliament of the king and his peers.

They immediately began to demoliſh and raze to the ground the large and ſtrong caſtle of la Rochelle. They then ſent to inform the lords who were at Poitiers, that if they would come thither the gates would be open to them.

The conſtable of France went with only two hundred men at arms. They received him with great joy, and did to him their homage and fealty as

to the king of France; for he ſhewed them a lawful commiſſion from the king, which conſtituted him his repreſentative in all thoſe parts of the realm.

CHAP. XLIII.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN TAKES SEVERAL CASTLES IN THE ROCHELLOIS.—THE KING OF ENGLAND EMBARKS TO COME TO THE ASSISTANCE OF THOUARS, BUT IS PREVENTED BY CONTRARY WINDS: UPON WHICH THOSE OF THOUARS, AND MANY OTHERS IN POITOU, SURRENDER TO THE FRENCH.

WHEN ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin had reſided four days in la Rochelle, and had pointed out to the inhabitants in what manner they ſhould ſupport and demean themſelves henceforward, he ſet out on his return to the lords he had left at Poitiers, whom he inſtantly marched off to conquer other ſtrong places in Poitou. They were full three thouſand lances.

On their departure from Poitiers, they laid ſiege to the caſtle of Benon*, and declared they would not leave it until it had changed maſters. A

* Benon,—a ſmall town in Aunis, dioceſe of la Rochelle.

ſquire

ſquire from the cõunty of Foix, named William de Pau, was governor of the place, under the captal de Buch: he had with him a Neapolitan knight, called ſir James, but without any ſurname. Many violent aſſaults were made, which were well repulſed by the garriſon.

Not far diſtant was the town of Surgeres*, which was garriſoned with Engliſh, by orders of the captal, then a priſoner, who ſaid one evening they would beat up the French quarters. They therefore marched out, according to an agreement with thoſe of Marans†, and muſtered in the whole about forty lances: they fell upon the quarters of the conſtable of France, wounded many, and particularly ſlew one of his own ſquires. The army were rouſed, and the French collected together as faſt as they could; but the Engliſh, who had performed all they intended, re-entered their fortreſſes unhurt.

The conſtable was ſo enraged at this, that he ſwore he would never quit the ſpot where he was without conquering the caſtle of Benon, and putting to death all within it. He gave orders that very morning for every one to be ready for the aſſault, and had large machines brought, ſo that for a long time ſuch an attack had not been ſeen. The men at arms and the Bretons did not ſpare themſelves: they entered the ditches with ſhields on their heads, and advanced to the foot of the

* Surgeres,—a town in Aunis, ſix leagues from la Rochelle.
† Marans,—a town in Aunis, ſix leagues from la Rochelle.

walls with pick-axes and iron crows, with which they worked ſo effectually that a large breach was made, through which they might eaſily enter. The caſtle was taken, and all within put to the ſword.

The conſtable had it repaired and new garriſoned. He then advanced towards Marans, the garriſon of which ſurrendered on having their lives and properties ſaved. He next came to Surgeres, which alſo put itſelf under the obedience of the king of France; for the Engliſh garriſon had gone away, being afraid to wait the arrival of the conſtable. He marched after this to the caſtle of Fontenay le Comte*, where the lady of ſir John Harpedon reſided. He aſſaulted both town and caſtle frequently: at laſt, the garriſon left it on capitulation, and retreated to Thouars with the lady, under paſſports from the conſtable. The French therefore took poſſeſſion of the caſtle and town, and halted there to reſt themſelves.

Sir Bertrand and the lords of France marched to beſiege Thouars, whither the greater part of the knights of Poitou had retired, namely, the viſcount de Thouars, the lords de Partenay, de Pouſanges, de Cors, de Crupignac, ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir Percival de Coulogne. They had cauſed to be made at Poitiers and at la Rochelle large machines and cannons, with which they much

* Fontenay le Comte,—a city in la Vendée, biſhoprick of la Rochelle.

harraſſed

haraſſed theſe lords of Poitou in Thouars; who, having mutually conſidered their ſituation, propoſed a treaty, the terms of which were, that there ſhould be a truce for them and all that belonged to them until Michaelmas enſuing 1372: during which time, they ſhould let the king of England, their lord, know the ſtate of the town and country: and if, within that period, they were not ſuccoured by the king of England or ſome of his children, they were, for themſelves and their territories, to ſwear obedience to the king of France.

When the treaty was agreed to, ſome of the knights returned to Paris. The captal de Buch was conducted thither, and impriſoned, under a good guard, in one of the towers of the Temple. The king was ſo much pleaſed with this prize that he gave to the ſquire that had taken him twelve hundred francs.

The meſſengers from the lords of Poitou arrived in England, to acquaint the king, the prince of Wales (who at that time had pretty well recovered his health) and the council with the ſituation of Poitou and Saintonge.

The king, learning that he was thus loſing all the territories which had coſt him ſo much to conquer, remained penſive and ſilent: at laſt he ſaid, that in a very ſhort time he would go to that country with ſuch a powerful force as would enable him to wait for the army of the king of France, and never return to England before the

had regained all that had been conquered from him, or loſe what remained.

At this period, the army under the command of the duke of Lancaſter was completed. It was very numerous, and had been ordered to Calais; but the king and council changed its deſtination, having determined it ſhould go to Poitou, Saintonge and la Rochelle, as being the places where the buſineſs was the moſt preſſing. The king of England iſſued a ſpecial ſummons throughout the realm, ordering all perſons capable of bearing arms to come properly equipped to Southampton and its neighbourhood by a certain day, when they were to embark.

None either wiſhed or dared to diſobey the command, ſo that numbers of men at arms and archers of all ſorts marched towards the ſea-coaſt, where there were about four hundred veſſels of different ſizes ready to receive them. The principal nobility waited on the king and his family, who reſided at Weſtminſter.

It had been ſettled between the king and prince, that if either of them ſhould die in this expedition, the ſon of the prince, named Richard, born at Bourdeaux, ſhould ſucceed to the crown. When therefore all the nobles were aſſembled about the king before his departure, the prince cauſed them to acknowledge, that in caſe he ſhould die before his father, his ſon ſhould ſucceed as king of England after the deceaſe of his grandfather. The earls, barons, knights, and commonalty of the

country

country were ſo much attached to the prince for his gallantry at home and abroad, that they cheerfully aſſented to his requeſt; the king firſt, then his children, and afterward the lords of England. The prince put them upon their oath, and made them ſign and ſeal to obſerve this arrangement before they ſeparated.

Matters being thus ſettled, the king, the prince, the duke of Lancaſter, the earls of Cambridge, Saliſbury, Warwick, Arundel, Suffolk, and Stafford, the lord Deſpenſer (who was but lately returned from Lombardy), the lords Percy, Neville, Roos, de la Warre, and all the principal barons of England, with about three thouſand lances and ten thouſand archers*, arrived at Southampton, when they embarked on board the fleet, which was the largeſt that ever a king of England ſailed with on any expedition whatever.

They ſteered for la Rochelle, coaſting Normandy and Brittany, and had various winds. The king of France, in the mean time, was collecting a great army in Poitou, to maintain his pretenſions to Thouars; ſo that the whole country was full of ſoldiers. The Gaſcons, on the other hand, were as actively employed in raiſing men under the command of the lord Archibald de Grailly, uncle to the captal de Buch, who had come forward at the entreaties of ſir Thomas Felton, ſéné-ſchal of Bourdeaux: they amounted to full three

* My MS. ſays, 'four thouſand men at arms and twenty thouſand archers,'

hundred

hundred ſpears. In this number were, the lords de Duras, de Courton, de Mucident, de Roſen, de Langoren, and de Landuras, ſir Peter de Landuras, ſir Peter de Courton, and ſir William Farrington, an Engliſhman.

This body of men left Bourdeaux, and advanced to Niort, where they found ſir Walter Hewett, ſir John Devereux, ſir Thomas Gournay, ſir John Creſswell, and ſeveral others. When they were all aſſembled, they amounted to about twelve hundred combatants. Sir Richard de Pontchardon arrived there alſo, and brought with him twelve hundred more.

The king of England and his children, with his large army, were beaten about on the ſea, and could not land at la Rochelle, nor any where near it, for wind and weather were againſt them. They remained in this ſituation for nine weeks; and Michaelmas was ſo near at hand that he found it was not poſſible for him to keep his engagement with the Poitevin lords in Thouars. He was ſeverely diſappointed at this, and diſbanded his troops to go whither they wiſhed. The king, on his return, ſaid of the king of France, 'that there never was a king who had armed himſelf ſo little, nor one who had given him ſo much embarraſſment.'

Thus did this large fleet ſteer to England, when it had as favourable a gale as could be wiſhed. After they were diſbanded, there arrived at Bourdeaux upwards of two hundred merchant ſhips for wines.

When

When Michaelmas was nearly arrived, the barons of England and Gaſcony, who had advanced to Niort in order to attend the king of England at Thouars, were very much ſurpriſed that they heard not any tidings of him. In order, therefore, to acquit themſelves, they ſent meſſengers to the Poitevin lords in Thouars, who ſaid to them; 'Very dear lords, we are ſent hither by the lords of Gaſcony in the dependence of the king of England, and by thoſe Engliſh lords now in company with them, who have deſired us to inform you, that they have collected all their forces, which may amount to about twelve hundred fighting men*, ready and willing to ſerve you. They entreat you to inform them, if, in the abſence of the king of England and his children, they can aſſiſt you, and if the relief may now be accepted; for they are eager to adventure their lives and fortunes in your company.'

The barons of Poitou replied; 'We will call a council on what you have ſaid; and we return our kind thanks to the barons of Gaſcony and

* All the printed copies and MSS. except the one I have lately quoted, have 1200. In the preceding page, Froiſſart ſays 1200 men came to Niort with ſir John Devereux, &c. and that ſir Richard de Pontchardon brought 1200 *more*. They ought, therefore, to have been 2400. My MS. nearly reconciles this by ſaying, that, 'the herald Chandos, who carried the meſſage to the knights in Thouars, informed them his lords were aſſembled in Niort with 1200 lances, Engliſh and Gaſcons, and about 2000 archers and luſty varlets.'

England

England for ſending to us, and for being ſo well prepared and willing to aſſiſt us.'

The knights of Poitou aſſembled; but at the firſt meeting they could not agree on any determination, for the lord de Partenay, who was one of the principal barons, was deſirous they ſhould defend themſelves, as if the king of England had been preſent: but others maintained, that they had given under their ſeals a declaration, that if neither the king of England nor any of his children were preſent, they would ſurrender themſelves to the obedience of the king of France. The lord de Partenay returned to his hôtel in a very ill humour; but he was afterwards ſo much talked to that he conſented to agree with the others. They therefore ſent word, that according to their treaty, it was abſolutely neceſſary for the king of England or one of his ſons to be preſent. The Engliſh and Gaſcons at Niort were much vexed on hearing this, but they could not prevent it.

The dukes of Berry, Burgundy, Bourbon, the conſtable of France, the lord de Cliſſon, the viſcount de Rohan, the dauphin of Auvergne, the lord Louis de Sancerre, the lord de Sully, and the barons of France: in all, about ten thouſand lances, without reckoning the others, advanced from Poitiers, and drew up in battle-array before Thouars the eve of Michaelmas-day, and alſo on the feaſt day until evening, when they retired to their quarters. On the morrow, the two brothers of the king of France and the conſtable ſent to the knights of Poitou in Thouars, to remind them

of

of what they had ſworn and ſealed. They returned for anſwer, that they ſhould very ſoon retire to Poitiers, when they would put themſelves and their dependencies under the obedience of the king of France.

The lords of France, ſatisfied with this anſwer, departed from before Thouars; and the dukes diſbanded the greater part of their men.

On this ſeparation, the lord de Cliſſon, with a large body of men at arms, of whom the conſtable had given him the command, came before Mortaigne ſur mer, which at that time was attached to the Engliſh. An Engliſh ſquire, called James Clerk, was governor of the place, and might have had with him about ſixty companions.

When the lord de Cliſſon came before Mortaigne, he aſſaulted it very vigorouſly: but, though he did not ſpare himſelf on the occaſion, he gained nothing; upon which he retreated to his quarters.

The governor, who found he ſhould be hard puſhed, ſent off ſecretly to thoſe knights of Gaſcony and England who were at Niort, to deſire they would come that night to Mortaigne; that he would lodge them in his hôtel; and that they might eaſily paſs through the quarters of the French forces, who were but two hundred fighting men.

Theſe lords ſet out from Niort, with five hundred lances, and rode all night to arrive at Mortaigne, for they had a great deſire to catch the lord de Cliſſon. But a ſpy, who had left Niort with them, having overheard ſome part of their intentions,

intentions, made as much haſte as poſſible to the lord de Cliſſon, whom he found ſitting at his ſupper. He informed him that the enemy had marched from Niort with five hundred combatants, and were advancing faſt towards him.

Upon hearing this, the lord de Cliſſon puſhed the table from before him, and haſtily armed himſelf. He mounted his ſteed, and ſet off ſuddenly, with all his men, leaving the greater part of what belonged to them on the field. He never ſtopped until he arrived at Poitiers. The Engliſh were much vexed at their diſappointment. They returned to Niort, where they left in garriſon ſir John Devereux, the earl of Angus and Creſswell. Sir Walter Hewett went to England. All the others went back to Bourdeaux, burning in their way the whole of the territories of the lord de Partenay.

Thus was all Poitou conquered, except the fortreſſes of Niort*, Eliſeth, Mortemer, Mortaigne, Luſignan, Chaſtel-Accart†, la Roche ſur Yon, Gauzar, la Tour de l'Arbre, Merxis and others. Theſe caſtles, however, held out, and made frequent inroads and attacks on their neighbours; ſometimes invading, at other times chaced back again.

---

* Niort,—a city in Poitou, fifteen leagues from Poitiers.

† Châtel l'Archer,—a village in Poitou.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY DARES NOT OPENLY DECLARE FOR THE KING OF ENGLAND.—SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN LAYS SIEGE TO CIVRAY*.—THE ENGLISH ARE DEFEATED, AND THE WHOLE OF THE COUNTRIES OF POITOU, SAINTONGE, AND LA ROCHELLE, ARE GIVEN UP TO THE FRENCH.

THE duke of Brittany, who remained peaceably in his duchy, was much hurt at the loſſes of the Engliſh; for he ſaid, ſuch as he was the king of England and his power had made him, as he never ſhould have been any thing of himſelf: that he owed all to the Engliſh king, who had made war in his behalf, had lent him large ſums of money, and had given to him his daughter in marriage, he would therefore have been happy to have added Brittany as an ally of England: but all the barons, knights, and ſquires of that country were too much attached to the French, particularly the lords de Cliſſon, de Laval, and the viſcount de Rohan, who at that time were the greateſt lords in Brittany. They addreſſed the duke in theſe words: 'Dear lord, as ſoon as we ſhall clearly perceive that you take any part with

* Civray,—a town in Poitou, on the Charente, ten leagues from Poitiers.

the

the king of England againſt the king of France, our ſovereign lord, we will all quit you and the country of Brittany.'

The duke could but ill diſguiſe his anger: however, he only ſaid, 'they did great wrong to the king of England.' He now began to open himſelf more, and to diſcover his ſentiments to others of the lords of Brittany.

The king of France, who had gained over to him all the principal perſons in that country except ſir Robert Knolles, had beſought them to inform him whenever they found the duke acting contrary to their wiſhes, aſſuring them he would provide a remedy.

The duke ſaw that he was not only ſuſpected, but narrowly watched; which alarmed him leſt they ſhould ſeize his perſon, and ſend him to Paris. He therefore ſignified to the king of England his ſituation, and entreated him to ſend men at arms to aſſiſt him if there ſhould be any occaſion. The king ordered thither four hundred men at arms and as many archers, under the command of lord Neville, who arrived at St. Mathieu Fin de Terre*, where they remained all the winter, without doing any damage to the country, paying for every thing they had; for the duke, on account of the ſuſpicions of his nobles, did not chuſe to put them into any of his caſtles. When

* St. Mathieu Fin de Terre, or St. Mahé, is a village in Brittany, dioceſe of St Pol de Léon. Froiſſart calls it St. Mathieu de Fine Pôterne.

the

the knights of Brittany ſaw the Engliſh thus come to the aſſiſtance of the duke, they were very indignant, and ſhut up their own caſtles, ſhewing much ill will againſt the duke. Things remained in this doubtful manner all the winter.

As ſoon as the ſeaſon permitted, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin marched from Poitiers with full fourteen hundred combatants, and laid ſiege to the town and caſtle of Civray. There were with him, of Breton knights, ſir Alain de Beaumanoir, John de Beaumanoir, Arnoul Limoúſin, Geoffry Ricon, Yvon de Laconet, Geoffry de Kerimel, with many other knights and ſquires. They fixed their quarters before Civray, and ſurrounded them with paliſadoes to prevent being ſurpriſed in the night. Frequently the moſt expert of them advanced to make trials of ſkill with thoſe of the caſtle, who defended themſelves valiantly.

During the ſiege, ſir Robert Micon, and Nicotin l'Eſcot*, the governors of Civray, ſent intelligence of their ſituation to ſir John Devereux and the earl of Angus, who were in garriſon at Niort. They inſtantly ordered the garriſons from Luſignan and Gouzar to march to Niort, when they amonnted all together to ſix or ſeven hundred good men at arms, well equipped, without counting the pillagers. They advanced until they came near to Civray, which is but four leagues from Niort; when they halted ſome time to ar-

* Sir Robert Micon and Nicotin l'Eſcot, My MSS. have ſir Robert Miton and ſir Martin Scott.

range themſelves, but it had been better for them had they proceeded to the quarters of the conſtable *.

News was brought to him of the arrival of the Engliſh, whilſt they were forming themſelves in the plain. He was not any way alarmed at it, but ordered his men to arm without making any delay, and to march out in a body. When he ſaw them all aſſembled, he ſaid to them; 'My good gentlemen, what hearts have you for a battle? I fancy we muſt engage our enemies.' They replied; 'My lord, we are very willing to do ſo, thanks to God.'

The conſtable then ordered an ambuſcade to be formed, of two hundred combatants, near to the caſtle: for he judged the garriſon would of courſe make a ſally. He then commanded the greater part of the paliſadoes to be levelled to the ground, that there might not be any hindrance when he ſhould march out, and drew up his forces in two battalions. Sir Alain de Beaumont commanded one and ſir Geoffry de Marneil † the other. It was ſtrictly forbidden for any one to advanc b-fore his banner until ordered, and he was to remain till then quietly in his rank.

---

* The hiſtorian of Brittany ſays, they there intoxicated themſelves.

† Marneil. The different editions have a variety of names for this perſon. I have followed the oldeſt MS. I have, which, from its writing, ſeems to be of the age with Froiſſart: but I ſhould rather ſuppoſe it ought to be ſir Geoffry de Kerimel, as he is particularly mentioned before.

We

We will now return to ſir Robert Miton and ſir Martin Scott, who, from the heights of the caſtle, ſaw the Engliſh in the plain drawn up in battle-array. They ſaid, 'Let us make ready to quit the caſtle, for we can eaſily paſs through theſe Bretons; and when our friends ſhall ſee we are engaged, they will come to our help, and we may do much miſchief before they will be prepared to defend themſelves or ſuſpect our intent.'

About ſixty combants that were to make this ſally armed themſelves, who, when ready, ſallied forth on horſeback to ſkirmiſh with the enemy; but they were attacked by the ambuſcade which had been laid for them. Hard indeed was the fight, but the Engliſh were ſo ſurrounded that they could neither advance nor retreat: they were all ſlain or made priſoners, not one eſcaping: the two governors were alſo taken.

The Engliſh remained in battle-array in the plain, and the conſtable of France in his quarters; for he imagined the Engliſh had placed a large ambuſcade in a coppice on his rear. The Engliſh had brought with them a rout of pillaging Poitevins and Bretons, amounting to about two hundred, whom they ſent forward to ſkirmiſh with the French.

As ſoon as theſe pillagers came oppoſite to the battalion of the lord conſtable, they declared themſelves loyal Frenchmen, and, if he pleaſed, would ſerve under him. The conſtable immediately aſſented, commanding them to wheel on one ſide, when he learnt from them the arrangement

of the Engliſh force, and that there was not any ambuſcade. On hearing this, the conſtable was more eaſy than before; and having ordered his men to form, he advanced with his banner, marching on the wing of the two battalions. They had diſmounted, and puſhed towards the paliſadoes which they had allowed to remain ſtanding, every one ſhouting, 'Nôtre Dame Gueſclin!'

The Engliſh on ſeeing them iſſue out of their fort, drew up alſo on foot, and advanced with great alacrity. Their firſt onſet was againſt the batalion of the conſtable, which was fierce and deſperate. The Engliſh drove quite through this battalion, and overthrew many. But the Bretons had wiſely drawn up their army: there were two battalions on the wing, who, being quite freſh, followed the conſtable, and, falling upon the Engliſh who were tired, beat them moſt dreadfully. They, however, like men of courage, turned about, without ſhrinking from their ill-fortune, and combated moſt valiantly with the arms they had, ſuch as battle-axes and ſwords of Bourdeaux, with which they dealt many hard blows. Several excellent knights of each ſide adventured boldly, to exalt their renown. This battle was as well fought, as many gallant deeds performed, and as many captures and reſcues took place as had been ſeen for a long time in all that country; for both armies were on foot, on a plain, without advantage to either. Each laboured to perform his duty well, and many were ſlain outright or deſperately wounded. In ſhort, all the Engliſh who had marched

marched thither were ſo completely diſcomfited that not one eſcaped death or captivity.

Two good ſquires were there ſlain, Richard Neville and William Worſley, James Willoughby was very badly wounded. Sir John Devereux, ſir Aimery de Rochechouart, David Holgrave, Richard Oliver, John Creſſwell, and many others from England and Poitou, were made priſoners.

This battle of Civray happened on the 20th day of March, 1373.

The conſtable and his army returned to their quarters, where they cleaned and refreſhed themſelves, and attended to the wounded and priſoners, of whom they had great numbers. The conſtable then ſent ſir Alain de Beaumont to hold a parley with the garriſon, who told them, that if they ſuffered themſelves to be taken by aſſault, they would all be put to the ſword without mercy. Upon this, the garriſon ſurrendered to the conſtable, who allowed them to leave the place and march to Bourdeaux, with a paſſport from him. The French gained this caſtle and territory, which ſubmitted to the obedience of the king of France.

The Bretons advanced eagerly towards Niort, which is a handſome town in Poitou, and had always ſupported the intereſt of the Engliſh, who had kept there a very large garriſon. As ſoon as the inhabitants of Niort heard the conſtable was marching thither, they went out to meet him, and, preſenting him the keys

of the town, conducted him and all his men into it with great rejoicings *.

The Bretons remained there four days to recover themſelves, when they departed in great array, with about fourteen hundred lances, for Luſignan †, which ſurrendered upon condition the garriſon ſhould march out unhurt, carrying away all they were able, and with a paſſport for the conſtable to conduct them to Bourdeaux. The French gained this caſtle, which was very grand and handſome, and all the lordſhip dependant on it, whoſe vaſſals became liege men to the king of France.

After this, the Bretons marched to Châtel l'Archer, when the conſtable ſent immediately to the lady de Plainmartin, who was the wife of ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, and reſided in it. She entreated he would grant her an eſcort, that ſhe might ſpeak with the duke of Berry at Poitiers. The conſtable complied with her requeſt, and ordered one of his knights to conduct her. When ſhe came before the duke ſhe proſtrated herſelf to the ground. The duke cauſed her to riſe, and demanded what ſhe wiſhed to ſay: 'My lord,' replied

* Niort is ſaid to have been gained by a ſtratagem. After the defeat at Civray the conſtable ordered his knights to dreſs themſelves in the emblazoned ſurcoats of his priſoners, which cauſed the garriſon at Niort to open their gates, believing them the Engliſh knights returning victorious from Civray.—*Hiſt. de Bretagne.*

† Luſignan,—a town in Poitou, twelve leagues from Niort.

ſhe,

ſhe, 'I am ſummoned by the conſtable to put myſelf and my lands under the obedience of the king of France. You know well, my lord, that my huſband is now lying a priſoner in Spain: his lands, therefore, are under my direction. I am but a weak woman, and cannot diſpoſe of my huſband's property as I pleaſe; for, if by accident I ſhould do any thing contrary to what he would have wiſhed, he will be angered and blame me for it. 'However, to ſatisfy you, and to keep my lands in peace, I offer you a compoſition for me and mine, on theſe terms: that no war ſhall be made on us, nor will we engage in any offenſive or defenſive war. When my lord ſhall have gained his liberty and be returned to England, whither I ſuppoſe he will retire, I will inform him of the terms of this compoſition, and whatever anſwer he ſhall ſend to me, the ſame I will forward to you.'

'Lady,' anſwered the duke, 'I grant it on condition that neither for yourſelf, nor caſtles, nor fortreſſes, you lay in a greater ſtore of proviſion, artillery, or men at arms than are now within them.'

The lady returned to Châtel l'Archer, when the ſiege was raiſed; for ſhe ſhewed the agreement made with the duke of Berry.

This army of Bretons, of which the conſtable was the leader, departed, and came before Mortemer. The lady de Mortemer ſurrendered herſelf and lands to the obedience of the king of

France. She gave up alſo the caſtle of Didonne *, which belonged to her. Thus was all Poitou, Saintonge and la Rochelle freed and delivered from the Engliſh.

When the conſtable had placed ſufficient garriſons every where, and found nothing rebellious, as far as the river Gironde, he returned to Paris. The dukes of Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, with the greater part of the barons of France who had been concerned in theſe conqueſts, had already arrived there. The king had entertained them moſt handſomely on their return; but this was nothing to the honours that were ſhewn ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin when he came to Paris: the king did not think he could ſufficiently teſtify his regard and eſteem for him, and detained him conſtantly about his perſon at Paris and elſewhere.

---

* Didonne,—or St. Georges de Diodonne,—a ſmall town in Saintonge.

I believe it was a dependance of the ſandich de Trane.—See Aſhmole.

CHAP. XLV.

THE SIEGE OF BECHEREL *.—PEACE BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND NAVARRE.—THE DEATH OF THE KING OF SCOTLAND.

ABOUT this time, the lords de Cliſſon, de Laval, d'Avaugour, de Tournemine, de Rieux, de Rochefort, the viſcount de Rohan, ſir Charles de Dinan banneret of Brittany, the marſhal de Blainville, the lords de Hambie, de Ruille, de Fonteville, de Granville, de Farmille, de Denneval, and de Cleres, bannerets of Normandy, with many others from Normandy and Brittany, laid ſiege to the ſtrong caſtle of Becherel, and preſſed it hard by their aſſaults. There were in this caſtle two able captains from England, ſir John Appleyard and ſir John Cornewall, who, with their companions, bravely defended themſelves: and at this time there were various gallant deeds, ſallies, ſkirmiſhes, and reſcues, performed before Becherel.

Not far diſtant was the town of St. Sauveur le Vicomte; in which were, ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir Aleyne Boxhull, ſir Philip Pechard, and the three brothers Maulevrier; ſo that, before the ſiege of Becherel, theſe two garriſons over-ran all Lower Normandy, and nothing could eſcape, but what

* Becherel,—a town in Brittany, two leagues from St. Malo.

was

was incloſed in forts, from being taken and carried to one or other of theſe towns. They ranſomed the biſhopricks of Bayeux and Evreux, in which the king of Navarre had connived, and reinforced them with men and proviſion from the garriſons he held in the county of Evreux.

He was not in good humour with the king of France; inſomuch that the garriſons of Cherbourg, Cocherel Conches, Breteuil, Evreux, and ſeveral others dependant on the king of Navarre, had much impoveriſhed and ruined the country of Normandy. However, about this period, the differences were accommodated between the two kings, and treaties entered into, through the mediations of the count de Saltzbourg, who had made many viſits to each party, and the biſhop of Evreux. The two kings met in an amicable manner in the caſtle of Vernon, when they ſwore, in the preſence of ſeveral of the great lords of France, peace, love, amity and alliance henceforward for ever.

The king of Navarre accompanied the king of France to Paris, who ſhewed him and his companions all manner of reſpect. The king of Navarre put his territories in Normandy under the government of his brother-in-law the king of France, and left his two ſons, Charles and Peter, with the king their uncle. He then affectionately took his leave, and returned to Navarre.

This peace continued for four years; but then great diſſentions aroſe between them, as you will hear in the courſe of this hiſtory, if I ſhould live

to

to finiſh it: I do not think, however, that it will be concluded in this book.

The 7th day of May 1373, king David of Scotland departed this life in the city of Edinburgh, and was buried in the abbey of Dunfermline, beſide Robert the Bruce his father. He left behind him neither male nor female offſpring, and was ſucceeded by his own nephew, Robert the Stewart of Scotland, who was a fine knight, and had eleven ſons*.

CHAP. XLVI.

THE EARL OF SALISBURY, SIR WILLIAM NEVILLE, SIR PHILIP COURTENAY, WITH MANY OTHER MEN AT ARMS, LAND IN BRITTANY.—THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE MARCHES THITHER; ON WHICH THE DUKE OF BRITTANY GOES TO ENGLAND.

ORDERS were given in England for the earl of Saliſbury, ſir William Neville and ſir Philip Courtenay, to put to ſea with a large body of men at arms, to guard the coaſts; for it was reported that the Spaniards and Evan of Wales

* Lord Hailes, in his Annals, ſays; 'David II. died 22d February, 1370-1, in the caſtle of Edinburgh, in the 47th year of his age and the 42d of his reign. He was buried in the church of the abbey of Holyrood, before the great altar.'

were

were on the ſeas, with ſix thouſand men to invade and burn the country.

Theſe lords had under their command forty large ſhips, without counting ſloops, and two thouſand men at arms, not including archers. They ſet ſail from Cornwall, where they had embarked for the coaſts of Brittany, and, arriving at St. Malo, burnt in the harbour ſeven large Spaniſh ſhips that were lying there. The country was much ſurpriſed at this, and ſaid the duke had ſent them orders to come thither; they began to ſuſpect his intentions more than ever, and ſtrengthened all their towns, caſtles and cities.

The duke had placed his confidence in ſome of the knights of Brittany, who had betrayed his ſecret, ſo that the king of France ordered his conſtable to invade Brittany with a large body of men at arms, and to take poſſeſſion for him of all cities, towns, caſtles and fortreſſes, as well as ſuch perſons whom he ſhould find in rebellion, and confiſcate their property.

The conſtable marched from Paris to Angers, and from thence iſſued his ſummons. He was there joined by the duke de Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the count du Perche, the count de Porcien, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the viſcounts de Meaux and d'Auſnay, ſir Raoul de Coucy, Robert de St. Pol, Raoual de Raineval, Louis de Sancerre marſhal of France, with numbers of barons and knights from the countries of Vermandois, Artois and Picardy, without counting thoſe from Anjou, Poitou and Touraine.

The

The earl of Saliſbury, who was at St. Malo with his army, was informed of this aſſembly of men at arms, and alſo that the whole of Brittany was in oppoſition to the duke. He ſet ſail with his fleet, and bore away until he came to Breſt, which has one of the ſtrongeſt caſtles in the world.

When the duke of Brittany heard of the march of the conſtable, he was afraid of truſting himſelf to the inhabitants of Vannes or Dinan, or indeed to any of his principal towns: he thought if he ſhould ſhut himſelf up in any one of them, he would run great riſks. He went, therefore, to the caſtle of Auray, which is ſituated between Vannes and Rennes, and was attached to him; for he had given the command of it to an Engliſh knight, called ſir John Auſtin. The duke left his lady under the care of this knight, entreating him to guard her well, which he promiſed to do. After this, he rode to St. Mahé; but they ſhut the gates againſt him: from thence he went to Concarneau *, where he embarked for England.

The conſtable of France entered Brittany, attended by thoſe barons and knights of the country who had been at the ſiege of Becherel, they having left the continuance of it to the knights and lords of Normandy.

On the arrival of the conſtable before Rennes, the inhabitants knew that his viſit was to take poſſeſſion of the whole country; for the king and his

* Concarneau,—a ſea-port in Brittany, about four leagues from Quimper.

council

council had publiſhed a declaration that the duke had forfeited it, becauſe he had ſurrendered to the Engliſh different towns, caſtles and forts, and had even wiſhed to take part with the king of England againſt the crown of France, from which he held his duchy by faith and homage. They were unwilling to incur the horrors of war, and received the conſtable in a peaceful manner, acknowledging the king of France for their lord.

After the conſtable had gained poſſeſſion of Rennes, he haſtened to Dinan, which ſurrendered to the obedience of the king of France. He next advanced to Vannes, which did the ſame. Luzumont *, however, held out for the duke; it was roughly aſſaulted and taken by ſtorm, ſo that all within were put to death. The conſtable marched to Jugon, which accepted the terms of the king of France; as did the caſtle of Goy la Forêt; la Roche-derrien, the towns of Guincamp, St. Mahé, and St. Malo. In like manner, did Quimpercorentin, Quimperlé, Credo, Galande, as well as ſeveral other fortreſſes in the neighbourhood, turn to the French. The conſtable marched firſt through Lower Brittany, becauſe it was more attached to duke John de Montfort than the upper parts.

When the duke of Brittany embarked for England, he nominated ſir Robert Knolles, governor of the duchy, but very few lords obeyed him. He,

* Probably Sucinio,—a caſtle near Vannes, which was taken by aſſault, and the garriſon ſlain. *Hiſt. de Bretagne.*

however,

however, ſufficiently reinforced his caſtle of Derval with men, and, having provided it with every neceſſary, gave the command of it to his couſin Hugh Brock. Sir Robert ſhut himſelf up in Breſt.

The conſtable came before Hennebon: the governor was an Engliſh ſquire, called Thomelin Ubich *, nominated by the duke. There was alſo with him in the caſtle a knight named ſir Thomas Prior, who had been ſent thither by ſir Robert Knolles; and their garriſon might conſiſt of about fourſcore men, without counting the inhabitants of the town.

The French, on their arrival, began to make a violent attack on the caſtle: they always carried with them many large engines and cannons, by means of which they had taken ſeveral towns, caſtles, and forts in Brittany: in particular, they had ſtormed the town of Quimperlé, of which James Roſs, a valiant ſquire of England, was governor. He could obtain no quarter, for he fell into the hands of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, who ſlew him and ſeveral others with his own hand: he had no mercy nor pity on any Engliſhman.

Let us return to the ſiege of Hennebon. The conſtable of France, after he had pointed his engines and cannon againſt the walls of the town and caſtle, which the lord Charles de Blois could never conquer, ordered all the men at arms to

* Thomelin Ubich. Q. Wich, or Holbeck. Barnes calls him Thomas Wich.

make

make a briſk aſſault, for he had reſolved to ſup in the place that evening.

They made a moſt fierce attack, without ſparing themſelves; and the inhabitants, aſſiſted by the Engliſh, made as gallant a defence. Upon this, the conſtable called out to them, ſaying; 'Attend to me, you men of Hennebon: it is quite certain we muſt conquer you, and that we will ſup in your town this evening: if, therefore, any of you be bold enough to throw a ſtone, arrow, or by any means hurt the ſmalleſt of our boys ſo that he be wounded, I vow to God I will have you all put to death.'

Theſe words ſo much frightened the inhabitants that they retired to their houſes, leaving the Engliſh to defend the place as well as they could: but the town was too large for them to guard every part of it, ſo that the army of the conſtable entered, and put all the Engliſh to death except the two captains, whom they made priſoners. Becauſe the townſmen had obeyed the orders of the conſtable, he commanded that no one, when they ſtormed the place, ſhould dare any way to injure them.

When ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin had thus won the town and ſtrong caſtle of Hennebon in Brittany, he remained there for fifteen days, and then marched towards Concarneau.

In the mean while, the earl of Saliſbury, ſir William Neville, ſir Brian Stapleton, and ſir William Lucy, having reinforced and re-victualled the fort of Breſt with men at arms, archers and proviſions,

proviſions, had embarked on board their ſhips in order the better to defend it againſt the French, whom the Engliſh knew to be in Brittany, but were uncertain to what quarter the conſtable would lead them.

The conſtable on coming before Concarneau, which is a ſea-port, took it by ſtorm, and ſlew all the Engliſh, except their captain, ſir John Langley, who received quarter. The French repaired the town, and ſtrengthened it with men at arms and all ſorts of proviſion. They then advanced to Breſt, in which were ſir William Neville and ſir Robert Knolles, with two hundred men at arms and as many archers.

The lords of France and of Brittany laid ſiege to Breſt: they had with them about ſix thouſand combatants. Shortly after they had commenced this ſiege, the duke of Anjou ſent for ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, who had under his command ſome of his men, to come and lay ſiege to la Roche ſur Yon, which the Engliſh ſtill held. Sir Oliver ſurrounded the place, and pointed againſt it large engines, which he had brought from Angers and Poitiers.

In company with theſe Bretons came ſeveral nobles and gentlemen of Poitou and Anjou: they kept up a ſharp attack, and preſſed hard the garriſon of la Roche ſur Yon, ſaying they would never leave the place before they had conquered it.

The duke of Anjou returned to his own country, but frequently ſent proviſion and other articles to thoſe who were carrying on the ſiege.

The conſtable, the duke of Bourbon, the counts d'Alençon and de Perigord, the dauphin d'Auvergne and the great barons of France ſtill maintained the ſiege of Breſt; but too little did they gain, for it is one of the ſtrongeſt caſtles in the world. As ſir Robert Knolles was the governor, the lords of France reſolved to ſend a body of men to inveſt his caſtle of Derval. Many noblemen of Brittany and of Touraine went on this expedition: they were, in the whole, about four hundred fighting men.

CHAP. XLVII.

THE FRENCH BESIEGE FOUR DIFFERENT PLACES.—LA ROCHE SUR YON SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.—THE SIEGE OF BREST IS RAISED BY A CAPITULATION, WHICH IS NOT KEPT.

THE lords of France were at this time beſieging four towns at once; namely, Becherel, Breſt, la Roche ſur Yon, and the one juſt formed before Derval. The beſiegers had many an aſſault to make, and many gallant feats of arms to perform, in order to obtain ſucceſs.

The

The inhabitants of la Roche ſur Yon, being the fartheſt off from any aſſiſtance, and ſurrounded on all ſides, entered into a capitulation, that if they were not ſuccoured within one month, the garriſon would march out, and deliver up the caſtle to the king of France.

The lord de Cliſſon and the other lords returned at the appointed day; and, when no reinforcements appeared to raiſe the ſiege, the caſtle ſurrendered, and the Engliſh, under the paſſports of the lord de Pons, marched away for Bourdeaux *.

After this, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon and the others who had been at this conqueſt, marched to Derval, whither they had cauſed large machines and engines to be brought. To this ſiege of Derval came the conſtable of France, the duke of Bourbon, the counts d'Alençon and du Perche, with numbers of the knights and barons of France, for they found they were only loſing their time before Breſt. Two thouſand, however, remained behind, who built a block-houſe in ſuch a ſituation that no one could enter Breſt to reinforce or re-victual it.

Sir Hugh Brock and the garriſon in Derval, ſeeing themſelves attacked by ſuch a force, were alarmed leſt they ſhould be taken by ſtorm, and propoſed a treaty for a truce of two months; and if within that time they were not relieved by the duke of Brittany, or others in ſufficient force to keep the field, to raiſe the ſiege and to combat the

* My MS. mentions ſir Robert Grenacres as governor of la Roche ſur Yon.

French, they would ſurrender themſelves and the caſtle to the duke of Anjou or to the conſtable: but if a body of men at arms ſhould arrive, and offer battle to the French, the garriſon ſhould remain in peace.

This treaty was concluded, and information ſent to the duke of Anjou, who was on the borders: he approved of it, on condition that the garriſon of Derval ſhould not during the truce receive any one into the caſtle.

Sir Hugh Brock ſent ſeveral knights and ſquires as his hoſtages for the due execution of the treaty.

After this capitulation, the conſtable of France made an excurſion to the city of Nantes. The citizens ſhut their gates, becauſe he had with him a large army, and went forth to know his intentions. The conſtable told them he had been nominated and ſent by the king of France, their lord, to take ſeiſin and poſſeſſion of the duchy of Brittany, which ſir John de Montfort, who called himſelf duke, had forfeited.

The citizens requeſted time to hold a council, to deliberate on what he had ſaid before they gave an anſwer. After a long time debating the buſineſs, they returned and ſaid to the conſtable; 'Dear lord, it ſeems quite marvellous to us how the king of France can thus ſeize the inheritance of our lord the duke; for the king, not long ſince, commanded us to receive him as our duke. We have therefore ſworn fealty and homage to him; and he has in return promiſed and ſworn to govern us as ſubjects, which he has hitherto punctually done. We have

have never had any grounds for ſuſpecting him of fraud or guile. If you enter this town by virtue of the procuration you ſay you have, we will allow you ſo to do; but on condition, that if it ſhould happen that the duke of Brittany return to this country, and be deſirous of becoming a good Frenchman, ſo that all prelates, barons, gentlemen and good towns in Brittany, ſhall acknowledge him for their lord, we ſhall be acquitted without loſs for what we now do, or may have before done; and that you will not conſent to any violence being offered to us, nor will you receive the rents or revenues of Brittany, but they ſhall remain as a depoſit with us until we have other information, or hear news more agreeable to us than what you have brought.'

The conſtable ſwore to keep every thing as procurator for the king of France in this caſe. He and all thoſe who were with him then entered the city of Nantes, which is the principal town in Brittany.

When ſir Robert Knolles heard that his couſin, ſir Hugh Brock, had concluded a capitulation for the caſtle of Derval with the French, and found that unleſs he alſo entered into a negotiation he could not by any means leave his poſt to ſuccour it, ſir Robert made offers of treating with the French and Bretons, who had remained before Breſt: they replied, that they could do nothing without the conſtable. An Engliſh knight and two ſquires, having had paſſports, came to a manſion near Nantes, where the conſtable reſided, on the banks

of the Loire, with other knights from France and Brittany.

A treaty was entered into, on theſe terms; that the garriſon of Breſt ſhould have a truce for forty days, during which time, unleſs there ſhould arrive a ſufficient force to fight with the conſtable, the fort was to be ſurrendered. The garriſon was to remain on the ſame footing it then was, without receiving any reinforcements of men or proviſion.

The negotiators returned to ſir Robert Knolles, who ſent, as pledges to the conſtable, able and ſufficient knights and ſquires. Theſe hoſtages, on their arrival, were ordered to the priſon of the conſtable; and all thoſe who had been at the ſiege of Breſt departed. The conſtable gave alſo leave for ſeveral others to go away, whom the king of France ſent to garriſon his cities, caſtles, towns, and forts in Picardy, for the duke of Lancaſter had landed at Calais with a large army.

When the earl of Saliſbury (who had all that ſeaſon cruiſed on the coaſts of Brittany and Normandy, having for that purpoſe been reinforced by the king of England, ſo that he might have on board with him a thouſand men at arms and two thouſand archers,) heard of the capitulation of Breſt, he ſaid, that if it pleaſed God, he would offer combat to the French. He made ſail, and arrived at Breſt, which is ſituated on the ſea ſhore, when he diſembarked, and drew up his men in order of battle before Breſt: at night, they all retreated to their veſſels. This he daily performed,

in

in order to be ready to fight the enemy ſhould they advance to that quarter.

The conſtable had diſmiſſed the greater part of his men: he had alſo on his hands, the ſieges of Becherel and of Derval, and did not imagine the earl of Saliſbury would have arrived on the coaſt ſo ſoon. He ſet out from near Nantes when the day approached for the ſurrender of Breſt, but did not march quite ſo far; for he had had intelligence that the Engliſh were in ſufficient force to fight with him. On hearing this, he halted where he was, and remained there quiet for about ſeven days, being deſirous of having the advice of a full council of war which he had ſummoned.

The earl of Saliſbury had poſted himſelf very advantageouſly before Breſt; and, finding that the conſtable and Bretons did not advance, he ſent a herald to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, who, on his arrival, reſpectfully ſaluted him, and ſaid; 'My lord, the earl of Saliſbury and the lords of England ſignify by me, who am a herald at arms and their ſervant, that as you had for a long time beſieged the town and caſtle of Breſt, and certain treaties and capitulations had been entered into for its ſurrender unleſs it ſhould be ſuccoured before a certain day, which is not far diſtant, they wiſh to inform you that they have encamped themſelves before Breſt to fulfil this engagement and to defend the caſtle: they beg and entreat of you, therefore, to advance, when you ſhall be fought with without fail; and ſuppoſing you refuſe your conſent to this, that you will ſend back the hoſtages.'

The conſtable replied; 'Herald, you bring us agreeable news, and you are welcome. You will tell your maſters, that we are more deſirous to combat them than they are to meet us; but that they muſt march to the place where the treaty was firſt entered into and agreed upon. You will inform them, that if they will advance to that place, they ſhall infallibly have a battle.'

The herald returned to his maſters before Breſt, and delivered his meſſage: they ſent him back to the conſtable, to whom he ſaid; 'My lord, I come again from my lords and maſters, to whom I repeated the words you charged me with: they ſay, that as they are only attached to the ſea-ſervice they have not brought any horſes with them, and are not accuſtomed to march on foot; for which reaſon they inform you, that if you will ſend them your horſes, they will come without delay to any place you ſhall pleaſe to appoint, and fight with you.'

'My good friend,' anſwered the conſtable, 'we will not, pleaſe God, give ſuch advantage to our enemies as we ſhould do were we to ſend them our horſes. It would alſo be conſidered as an inſult; and, ſhould we think of ſuch a thing, it would be right we ſhould have good and ſufficient ſecurity to anſwer for our horſes.'

'In truth,' replied the herald, 'they have not charged me to add any thing on this head; only, that if you do not accept their propoſition, they ſay you have not any cauſe to detain their hoſtages, and that in returning them you will act but juſtly.'

The

The conſtable ſaid, he was not of that opinion.

Thus did the buſineſs remain; and the herald returned to the earl of Saliſbury and the knights before Breſt, who, when they found they could not gain any thing, and that the hoſtages were not ſent back, were exceedingly vexed: they, however, remained ſteadily before the place, without moving, until the appointed day was paſſed, and then perceiving the conſtable would not advance to fight with them, they entered Breſt, which they greatly reinforced and re-victualled.

The conſtable, finding the Engliſh were not likely to come to offer him battle, marched off, carrying with him the Engliſh hoſtages as priſoners, and ſaid, the Engliſh had not kept what they had bound themſelves to perform *.

After

* My MS. has the following additions:

'The herald, on receiving his laſt meſſage, returned to his lords before Breſt, who held a council on it.

'Shortly after this, the conſtable, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the lords de Cliſſon and de Laval, with the other barons and knights, amounting to four thouſand lances and twenty thouſand other men, marched to within one day's journey of Breſt, where having ſtrongly encamped themſelves, they ſent to let the Engliſh know they were now on the ſpot where the treaty had been concluded, and if they would march thither they would be combated; otherwiſe they would loſe their hoſtages. The earl of Saliſbury, on learning this, found the French were trickiſh and had not any real intention of fighting, ſo that he returned for anſwer by his own herald, who accompanied the French herald, that if the conſtable would advance two-thirds of the way, they would on foot perform the other third;

After the relief of Breſt, the earl of Saliſbury put to ſea to guard the coaſts according to the orders he had received. Sir Robert Knolles ſet out alſo from Breſt, and arrived at his caſtle of Derval. As ſoon as this was known, information of it was ſent to the duke of Anjou, who was with the conſtable near Nantes. They gueſſed what would be the conſequence of this; for ſir Robert broke all the treaties which his couſin had entered into, and ſent to tell the duke of Anjou and the conſtable, that he ſhould not keep one article of them, as his people had not the power to enter into any treaty without his knowledge and conſent. The duke, on hearing this, came in perſon to the ſiege of Derval.

---

third; or, if the French would not do this, the Engliſh would advance half of the way on foot, if the French would there meet them on foot: or, if the French would not accept either of theſe propoſitions, they were bound in juſtice to return the hoſtages, for the Engliſh had cheerfully and honourably performed their engagement.'

CHAP. XLVIII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER LANDS AT CALAIS, AND INVADES PICARDY.—A PART OF HIS ARMY DEFEATED BY THE LORD DE BOURSIERS* BEFORE RIBEMONT †.—ANOTHER PART OF HIS ARMY IS DEFEATED NEAR SOISSONS BY AN AMBUSCADE OF BURGUNDIANS AND FRENCH.

UPWARDS of three thouſand men at arms and ten thouſand Engliſh archers had landed at Calais. Three years before, thise xpedition had been planned and provided for: of courſe, it was well furniſhed with all things. The following knights paſſed over with the dukes of Lancaſter and Brittany: the earls of Warwick, Stafford and Suffolk, Edward lord Deſpencer, firſt baron of the realm, and at that time conſtable of the army, the lords Willoughby, de la Pole, Baſſet, Roos, Latimer, lord Henry Percy, lord Lewis Clifford, lord William Beauchamp, the canon de Robeſart, ſir Walter Hewett, ſir Hugh Calverley, ſir Stephen Coſſington, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, and many other knights and ſquires from England; but I cannot name them all.

The king of France, who knew well that the Engliſh would croſs the ſea, had reinforced his ci-

* Denys Sauvage calls him the lord de Soubiſe, but gives no reaſon for it. My MSS. have Bourſiers.

† Ribemont is a town in Picardy, four leagues from St. Quentin.

ties

ties, towns, caſtles and forts in Picardy, Artois, and alſo in Vermandois, and had every where poſted men at arms in ſufficient numbers; ſuch as Bretons, Burgundians, Picards, Normans, and many whom he had ſubſidized from the empire.

The Engliſh left Calais as ſoon as they had mounted and arranged their carriages, of which they had great numbers. They marched in three battalions, and in ſuch good order as it was not eaſy to improve: that of the marſhals marched firſt, of which the earls of Warwick and Suffolk were the leaders; then the dukes of Lancaſter and Brittany, who had many gallant knights to accompany them: the conſtable, the lord Deſpencer, brought up the rear. They marched in cloſe order, without any one being ſuffered to quit his rank; and the van was always armed ready for combat. They were quartered together at night, keeping a ſtrong and ſtrict guard to prevent a ſurpriſe. They advanced three leagues a-day, and no one dared to march before the banners of the marſhals unleſs he had been ordered forward as a ſcout.

They paſſed by Montrieul, of which the lord Handebourg * was governor, St. Omer, and afterwards Terouenne, but without attacking them. The light troops burnt all the lands of the count de St. Pol, and the army advanced very near to Arras, when the two dukes took up their quarters in the monaſtery of St. Eloy, and remained there two days.

* Handebourg. Q.

They

They then marched off by the walls of Arras, but made no aſſault, for they knew it would be loſt time. They came to Bray ſur Somme*, where the two marſhals had a ſharp engagement before the gates; for there was a good garriſon within of able knights and ſquires of Picardy, under the command of the viſcount de Meaux and ſir Raoul de Rayneval. The canon de Robeſart ſtruck down three with his ſpear before the gate, and the ſkirmiſh was ſevere; but the French ſo well defended the gates, that they loſt nothing. The Engliſh continued their march, following the courſe of the river Somme, which they thought to croſs between Ham, in Vermandois, and St. Quentin. Thus did this army advance under the command of the duke of Lancaſter, according to orders from the king his father.

The lord de Bourſiers was at this time returning from Hainault into France, and arrived ſo opportunely at Ham that the inhabitants moſt earneſtly entreated of him to remain there to aſſiſt them in defending their town againſt the Engliſh. He complied with their requeſt, ſtaying with them two days, during the time the Engliſh paſſed by, following the courſe of the river Somme, to enter the Vermandois and to croſs the river at the narroweſt part.

When the lord de Bourſiers heard that the Engliſh had almoſt all paſſed, and that they were ad-

* Bray ſur Somme,—a village of Picardy, election of Peronne.

vancing

vancing towards St. Quentin and Ribemont; where the lord du Chin, whoſe daughter he had married, poſſeſſed a large eſtate, and where he alſo had lands in right of his wife, he took leave of the citizens of Ham, who thanked him much for his ſervices, as he knew the caſtle of Ribemont was quite unprovided with men at arms. He was attended by as many companions as he could muſter, but they were few in number, and rode on until he came to St. Quentin, where he did not arrive without great danger, for the whole country was overſpread with Engliſh. He got into the town juſt in time, for the Engliſh light troops came to the gates as he entered them.

The lord de Bourſiers found there ſir William des Bourdes, who was governor of it for the king: he was received by him joyfully, and much preſſed to ſtay there, to help him in the defence of the town.

The lord de Bourſiers excuſed himſelf by ſaying, that he had undertaken to go to Ribemont, to defend that town and caſtle, which was without any garriſon; and he entreated ſir William ſo much for aſſiſtance that he gave him twelve croſs-bows. He had not advanced far before he ſaw a company of Engliſh; but, as he knew the country well, he took a more circuitous road to avoid them: the Engliſh never quitted their line of march.

He was this whole day in much peril on his road towards Ribemont. He met a knight from Burgundy, called ſir John de Bueil, who was going to St. Quentin; but, after ſome converſation with the

lord

lord de Bourſiers, he returned with him towards Ribemont. His force might now conſiſt of about forty ſpears and thirty croſs-bows.

As they were approaching Ribemont, having ſent forward one of their ſcouts to inform the inhabitants that they were coming to their aid, they perceived a body of Engliſh advancing, who appeared to conſiſt of at leaſt fourſcore men on horſeback. The French ſaid, 'Here are our enemies returning from pillage: let us meet them.' Upon which they ſtuck ſpurs into their horſes, and galloped off as faſt as they could, crying out, 'Nôtre Dame Ribemont:' they fell upon the Engliſh, whom they defeated and ſlew. Happy were they who could eſcape.

When the French had thus conquered theſe Engliſh, they came to Ribemont, were they found the lord du Chin, who a little before had entered the town with forty ſpears and twenty croſs-bows. Whilſt theſe three noble knights were on the ſquare of the town before the caſtle, and many of their men had gone to their quarters to diſarm themſelves, they heard the ſentinel on the caſtle-wall cry out, 'Here are men at arms advancing to the town.' On which they went nearer the caſtle, and aſked how many he thought there might be: he anſwered, 'About fourſcore.' Upon which, the lord de Bourſiers ſaid; 'It behoves us to go and fight with them, for otherwiſe we ſhall have much blame in having ſuffered them thus to come up to our very walls unnoticed.'

The

The lord du Chin replied; 'Fair ſon, you ſay well: order out our horſes, and diſplay my banner.' Sir John de Bueil rejoined; 'Gentlemen, you ſhall not go without my company: but I would adviſe you to act more deliberately in this buſineſs; for peradventure they may be men at arms lightly mounted, whom the marſhals or conſtable may have ſent hither to draw us out of our fortreſs, and our ſally may turn out to our loſs.'

The lord de Bourſiers ſaid; 'If you will adopt my plan, we will go and fight them, and that as ſpeedily as may be; for whatever may happen, I am determined to do ſo.' On ſaying this, he fixed on his helmet and tightened his armour, and then ſallied forth with about one hundred and twenty combatants. The Engliſh were about fourſcore, part of the troop of ſir Hugh Calverley, though ſir Hugh himſelf had remained with the duke of Lancaſter: there were as many as ſix knights and other ſquires, who had advanced to revenge the deaths of their companions.

On the French coming out at the gate, they met the Engliſh, who lowering their ſpears, vigorouſly attacked them: they opened their ranks, when the Engliſh galloped quite through: this cauſed ſo great a duſt that they could ſcarcely diſtinguiſh each other. The French ſoon formed again, and ſhouted their cry of 'Nôtre Dame Ribemont!' Many a man was unhorſed on both ſides. The lord du Chin fought with a leaden mace, with which he ſmaſhed every helmet that came within

within reach of it; for he was a ſtrong and luſty knight, well made in all his limbs: but he himſelf received ſuch a blow on his caſque that he reeled, and would have fallen to the ground had he not been ſupported by his ſquire. He ſuffered from this blow as long as he lived.

Several knights and ſquires of the Engliſh were greatly ſurpriſed that the arms on the lord du Chin's banners were preciſely the ſame as thoſe of the lord de Coucy, and ſaid, 'How is this? has the lord de Coucy ſent any of his men hither? he ought to be one of our friends.' The battle was very mortal; for in the end almoſt all the Engliſh were killed or made priſoners, few eſcaping. The lord de Bourſiers took two brothers of the name of Pembroke; one a knight, the other a ſquire. Sir John de Beuil took two others, with whom they retreated into Ribemont.

The Engliſh army marched by, but made no aſſault; for they thought it would be loſing time. Orders were given to do no damage, by burning or otherwiſe, to the lands of the lord de Coucy, who was at the time in Lombardy, and interfered not with the wars in France.

The Engliſh fixed their quarters in the valleys below Laon and lower down than Bruyeres* and Crecy†, whence they did much miſchief to the Laonnois. But before this, the king of France

* Bruyeres,—a town in Picardy, dioceſe of Laon.

† Crecy ſur Serre,—a town in Picardy, three leagues from Laon.

had ordered every thing valuable to be carried into the towns and ſtrong places, which were ſo well garriſoned that the Engliſh could not gain any thing by attacking them, nor indeed had they any thoughts of ſo doing, but were only anxious that the French would meet them in battle in the plain. The king, however, had forbidden this very ſtrictly in his daily orders. He had them followed by the reſt of his cavalry ſo cloſe on their rear, as to intimidate them from quitting the main army. The French took up their quarters every evening in fortified towns, and in the day-time purſued the Engliſh, who kept themſelves in a compact body.

It happened that one morning a party of Engliſh to the number of ſix ſcore lances, who were over-running the country beyond Soiſſons, fell into an ambuſcade of Burgundians and French. It was commanded by ſir John de Vienne, ſir John de Bueil, ſir William des Bourdes, ſir Hugh de Porcien, ſir John de Coucy, the viſcount de Meaux, the lords de Rayneval and de la Boue, with ſeveral more knights and ſquires, amounting in the whole to full three hundred lances. They had followed the Engliſh, and this night they had encamped in the fields of the Soiſſonnois, where they had placed an ambuſcade in a ſmall coppice. The Engliſh came in the morning to plunder a village behind which their army was quartered. When they had paſſed the ambuſh, the French ſallied forth with banners and pennons diſplayed. The Engliſh, ſeeing ſuch a large body ſo near them,

them, halted, and would have ſent to their army, which was a good league off: but ſir Walter Huet, a great Engliſh captain, and near the ſpot where this ſurpriſe happened, mounting his horſe in great haſte, his lance in its reſt, but without helmet or vizor, and only his coat of mail on, galloped forward without further thought or conſideration: his men followed him as well as they could. In the confuſion, he had his neck quite pierced through with a ſpear, and fell dead on the field.

The Engliſh fought very valiantly, but at laſt were almoſt all taken or ſlain. The French made priſoners of the following knights: ſir Matthew Redmayne, ſir Thomas Fowkes, ſir Hugh Brudenel, ſir Thomas Spencer, ſir Thomas Emerton, ſir Nicholas Gaſcoign, ſir John Chandler, ſir Philip Cambray, ſir John Harpedon, ſir Matthew Gournay, ſir Robert Twyford, ſir Geoffry Say, ſir John Bourchier, ſir Geoffry Worſley, ſir Lionel Daultry; and, of eſquires, William Daultry, John Gaillard, Thomas Bradley, Henry Montford, Guy Hewett, John Meynil, William Goſtwick, John Flamſtead, Thomas Sollerant, William Quentin, Robert Boteler, Robert Audley, Ralph Stanley, and Thomas Archer*.

News was carried to the main body, that their men were engaged: upon which, the marſhals, with the whole army, haſtened thither: though they could not make ſuch ſpeed but that the buſi-

* I have copied theſe names from Barnes.

neſs was finiſhed, and the Burgundians and French had left the field.

The Engliſh knew not where to ſeek the French.

Thus paſſed this action, according to the information I have received; near to Soucy in the Soiſſonnois, the 20th September, 1363.

After theſe two encounters at Ribemont and Soucy, nothing further befel the duke of Lancaſter and his army that is worth mentioning. They marched through various narrow paſſes and defiles, but kept in cloſe and good order. The council of the king of France therefore ſaid to him; 'Let them go; by their ſmoke alone they cannot deprive you of your kingdom: they will be tired ſoon, and their force will diſſolve away, for as ſtorms and tempeſts appear ſometimes in tremendous forms over a whole country, yet they diſſipate of themſelves, and no eſſential harm happens, thus will it befal theſe Engliſh.'

CHAP. XLIX.

THE HOSTAGES SENT FROM DERVAL ARE BEHEADED.—SIR ROBERT KNOLLES RETALIATES ON THOSE PRISONERS WHOM HE HAD TAKEN.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER FINISHES HIS EXPEDITION.

SIR Robert Knolles, as I have before related, was returned to his caſtle of Derval, which he conſidered as his own inheritance, and had determined to break the treaty which had been entered into by his couſin and the duke of Anjou: on which account, the duke himſelf was come to the ſiege of Derval, attended by numbers from Brittany, Poitou and the lower countries.

The king of France was deſirous that his conſtable, who was there, and the lord de Cliſſon, with ſeveral more, ſhould return to France, to aſſiſt his brother the duke of Burgundy in the purſuit of the Engliſh. He frequently renewed theſe orders to the different lords, who were anxious to obey them, and alſo to gain poſſeſſion of this caſtle of Derval.

When the day was paſſed on which the caſtle was to have been ſurrendered, the beſiegers wondered what the garriſon were thinking on: they imagined that ſir Robert Knolles had thrown himſelf into it

with reinforcements. The duke and conſtable ſent to ſir Robert, and to ſir Hugh Broc who had made the treaty.

The herald, on arriving in the ſquare of the caſtle, ſaid to the gentlemen preſent: 'My lords ſend me here to enquire from you the reaſons, which they would willingly learn, why you do not ranſom your hoſtages by ſurrendering the caſtle according to the terms of the treaty to which you, ſir Hugh, have ſworn.

Sir Robert Knolles then addreſſed the herald, ſaying; 'Herald, you will tell your maſters, that my couſin had no authority to enter into any capitulation or treaty without my conſent firſt had; and you will now return with this anſwer from me.'

The herald went back to his lords, and related to them the meſſage ſir Robert Knolles had charged him with: they ſent him again to tell the garriſon, that from the tenor of the treaty, they ought not to have received any one into the fort, and that they had received Sir Robert Knolles, which they ſhould not have done; and likewiſe to inform them for a truth, that if the caſtle was not ſurrendered, the hoſtages would be beheaded.

Sir Robert replied; 'By God, herald, I will not loſe my caſtle for fear of the menaces of your lords; and if it ſhould happen that the duke of Anjou, through arrogance, puts my friends to death, I will retaliate; for I have here in priſon ſeveral knights and ſquires of France, and if I were offered one hundred thouſand francs I would not ſhew mercy to any one of them.'

When

When the herald had delivered this anſwer, the duke of Anjou ſent for the headſman, and ordered the hoſtages, who were two knights and a ſquire, to be brought forth, and had them beheaded before the caſtle, ſo that thoſe within might ſee and know them.

Sir Robert Knolles inſtantly ordered a table to be fixed without ſide of the windows of the caſtle, and had led there four of his priſoners, three knights and a ſquire, for whom he might have had a great ranſom, but he had them beheaded and flung down into the ditch, the heads on one ſide and the bodies on the other.

The ſiege was raiſed after this, and all the men at arms returned to France; even the duke of Anjou went to Paris to viſit the king his brother: the conſtable, with the lord de Cliſſon and others, marched to the city of Troyes, for the Engliſh were already in that part of the country: they had croſſed the river Marne, and were taking the road towards Auxerre.

At this time, pope Gregory XI. had ſent the archbiſhop of Rouen and the biſhop of Carpentras in legation to France, to endeavour, if poſſible, to make peace between the kings of France and England: theſe two prelates had many difficulties in travelling towards the king of France and his brothers, and afterwards to the duke of Lancaſter: the Engliſh, however, kept advancing through the country of Fôrets, having paſſed Auvergne, Limouſin, and the rivers Loire, Allier, Dordonne, and Lot. Neither the Engliſh

nôr French were much at their eaſe in this expedition: three knights of Hainault, ſir Fateres de Berlammont, ſir Bridol de Montagin, and le bègue de Warlan, as well as ſome on the ſide of the Engliſh, died on their march.

The dukes of Lancaſter and Brittany continued their route with the army until they were arrived at Bergerac, four leagues from Bourdeaux, continually purſued by the French.

The duke of Anjou and the conſtable of France were in the upper countries near Rouergue, Rodais, and Toulouſe, and had advanced as far as Perigueux, where they had fixed their quarters.

The two before-mentioned prelates journeyed from each party, preaching to them ſeveral reaſons why they ſhould come to an agreement. But each held ſo obſtinately to his own opinion that they would not make any conceſſions, without having conſiderable advantages given them.

The duke of Lancaſter came to Bourdeaux about Chriſtmas; and the two dukes remained there the whole winter and the following Lent. Several knights went away, on the expedition being finiſhed: the lord Baſſet and his company returned to England, for which king Edward reprimanded him.

CHAP. L.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU'S CAMPAIGN INTO UPPER GASCONY*.

SOON after Eaſter, in the year 1374, the duke of Anjou, who reſided at Perigord, made a great muſter of his forces; at which the conſtable of France and the greater part of the barons and knights of Brittany, Poitou, Anjou, Touraine, were preſent. There were alſo, from Gaſcony, ſir John d'Armagnac, the lords d'Albret and de Perigord, the counts de Comminges and de Narbonne, the viſcounts de Caraman, de Villemure and de Thalar, the count dauphin d'Auvergne: moſt of the lords of Auvergne and of Limouſin: the viſcount de Minedon, the lords de la Barde and de Pincornet, and ſir Bertrand de Charde. They amounted to fifteen thouſand men on foot, and a large body of Genoeſe and croſsbows. They began their march towards upper Gaſcony, and came before St. Silvier†, of which an abbot was lord. Notwithſtanding it was talked of as a ſtrong town, the abbot was afraid of loſing it by force; ſo that he began to treat with the duke of Anjou, telling him that neither himſelf

* For a more chronological account of this campaign, ſee the hiſt. de Languedoc, vol. iv. p. 580.

† St. Silvier. Probably St. Sever de Ruſtan, in Bigorre.

nor

nor his territories wiſhed to wage war againſt him, or in any way incur his indignation, and that the ſtrength of his town and all he could bring to defend it were as nothing in compariſon with the towns and caſtles of upper Gaſcony, whither, it was ſuppoſed, he intended to march. He therefore entreated that he might remain in peace, upon the terms that he ſhould obſerve an exact neutrality; and that, whatever thoſe lords of Gaſcony who poſſeſſed meſne fiefs ſhould do, he would do the ſame. His requeſt was granted, on his giving hoſtages, who were ſent to priſon in Perigueux.

The whole army, of which the duke of Anjou was commander, marched away towards Montmarſen*, and the town of Lourde† in upper Gaſcony, of which ſir Arnold de Vire was governor. The French beſieged and ſurrounded it on all ſides, having firſt demanded if they were willing to ſurrender themſelves to the duke of Anjou. The inhabitants of Lourde ſoon agreed to it; but the knight ſaid, that the count de Foix had appointed him to that poſt, and he would not ſurrender it to any man except to him.

When the conſtable of France heard this, he ordered the army to advance and briſkly aſſault it, which they did with ſo much vigour that the town was taken and the governor ſlain, as well as ſeveral men and women: the town was pillaged and ruined,

* Montmarſen,—a town in Gaſcony.

† Lourde,—a town in Gaſcony,—the capital of the valley of Lavedan, dioceſe of Tarbes.

and

and left in that ſtate: however, on their departure they placed therein ſome of their men.

The French entered the lands* of Châtel-bon, which they deſpoiled; they then paſſed through the territories of Châtel-neuf, which they attacked, and continued their march upwards towards Bierne, and came to the entrance of the lands of the lord de l'Eſcut: they advanced until they came to a good town and ſtrong caſtle, called Sault†, which was dependant on the county of Foix.

The prince of Wales had frequently intended, before his expedition to Spain, to make war on the count de Foix for all theſe meſne fiefs, which he had in Gaſcony, becauſe the count would not acknowledge that he held them from him: the affair had remained in this ſituation in conſequence of the Spaniſh expedition. Now, however, the duke of Anjou, who was conquering all Aquitaine, ſeemed willing to take poſſeſſion of it, and had thus beſieged Sault in Gaſcony, which was not a trifle nor eaſy to gain: the governor of it was ſir William de Pau.

When the count heard they were conquering his lands and the meſne fiefs, for which it was but juſt he ſhould pay homage either to the kings of France or England, he ſent for the viſcount de

---

* Theſe lands are beyond the Pyrenées: therefore, it more probably alludes to the town of Mauvoiſin and the other lands the viſcount held under the king of England.—See Hiſt. de Languedoc, vol. iv. p. 583.

† Sault de Navaille,—a ſmall town in Gaſcony, near Orthez.

Châtel-

Châtel-Bon, the lords de Marſen and de l'Eſcut, and the abbot de St. Silvier. He then demanded a paſſport from the duke of Anjou, who was occupied with the ſiege of Sault, that they might wait upon him in ſafety: the duke granted it. They therefore went and held a conferrence with him and his council, when it was agreed that the aforeſaid lords and their territories ſhould remain in peace until the middle of Auguſt, on condition that thoſe who ſhould then be the ſtrongeſt before the town of Monſac* on the part of the kings of France or of England, and there keep the field, ſhould have the enjoyment of theſe rights, and to that party theſe lords of meſne fiefs ſhould ever after belong. The count de Foix and the other lords gave hoſtages for their due performance of this agreement. The duke of Anjou returned to Perigueux with his army, but did not diſmiſs any one.

* A town in Perigord, near Bergerac.

CHAP. LI.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE AND HIS COMPANIONS ARE RANSOMED.—A SHORT TRUCE BETWEEN THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.—BECHEREL SURRENDERS ON TERMS.—THE DEATH OF THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.

ABOUT this time there was an exchange made of the lands of the conſtable of France and ſir Oliver de Mauny, which the king of Spain had given to them for their gallant ſervices. The conſtable exchanged his eſtate of Soria in Caſtille for the earl of Pembroke, who had been made priſoner off la Rochelle. Sir Oliver de Mauny gave up his eſtate of Grette for ſir Guiſcard d'Angle and his nephew William, Otho de Grantſon, John de Grinieres and the lord de Tannaybouton.

Whilſt this treaty was going forward, another was opened between the dukes of Anjou and of Lancaſter, through the means of the two before mentioned prelates. The duke of Lancaſter ſent, under paſſports, to the duke of Anjou at Perigord, (where he reſided and governed as king or regent the lordſhips of England and France,) the canon de Robeſart, and the lords William Hellunay and Thomas Douville. A truce was agreed on, between theſe dukes and their allies, until the laſt day of Auguſt: and they engaged themſelves to be, in the month of September, in the country of Picardy,—

Picardy,—the duke of Anjou at St.Omer; and the duke of Lancaſter at Calais.

After this truce, the dukes of Lancaſter and of Brittany, the earls of Warwick, Suffolk and Stafford, the lords de Spencer and Willoughby, the canon de Robeſart, lord Henry Percy, the lord Manne*, with the other lords and knights, ſet out from Bourdeaux the 8th day of July, and returned to England.

Sir John Appleyard and ſir John Cornewall held their caſtle of Becherel for nearly a year againſt the French, who were cloſely beſieging it, and had much conſtrained them; but not receiving any intelligence of ſuccours coming to their aſſiſtance, and their proviſions beginning to fail, they held a council whether it would not be adviſable to offer terms for its ſurrender. They entered, therefore, into a treaty with the lords d'Hambuye, d'Eſtonville, de Blainville, de Frainville, and the barons of Normandy, who were quite tired with the ſiege having continued ſo long. But they would not conclude any thing without the knowledge of the king of France. He conſented, that if the duke of Brittany in perſon did not come in ſufficient force before Becherel, by All Saints-day next approaching, to raiſe the ſiege, the garriſon ſhould ſurrender on capitulation. Hoſtages were given to obſerve theſe terms.

The earl of Pembroke was ranſomed for 120,000 francs, which the Lombards of Bruges agreed to

* Q. Maine.

pay

pay when he ſhould be arrived in good health at Bruges. The earl journeyed, under the paſſport of the conſtable, through the kingdom of France: but a fever, or ſome other ſickneſs, overtook him on the road, ſo that he was obliged to travel in a litter unto the city of Arras, where his diſorder increaſed ſo much as to occaſion his death. The conſtable, by this event, loſt his ranſom*.

The earl of Pembroke left by his ſecond wife, the lady Anne, daughter of ſir Walter Manny, a fair ſon, who at that time was two years old.

Sir Guiſcard d'Angle obtained his ranſom, as you ſhall hear. You remember that the lord de Roye remained priſoner in England: he had an only daughter, a great heireſs. The friends of the lord de Roye entered into an agreement with ſir Oliver de Mauny, a Breton knight, and nephew to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, that if he could deliver the lord de Roye from his priſon by means of an exchange, he ſhould have the daughter of the baron de Roye for his wife, who was of very high birth.

Upon this, ſir Oliver de Mauny ſent to the king of England, to know which of the knights he would wiſh to have ſet at liberty for the lord de Roye. The king was moſt inclined for ſir Guiſcard d'Angle. The lord de Roye was therefore

* The conſtable carried on for three years, a fruitleſs lawſuit with the Flemiſh merchants for this ranſom, which they refuſed to pay. He at length gave up his claim to the king of France for 50,000 Francs.—*Hiſt. de Bretagne.*

ſent

ſent home free, and the lord de Mauny eſpouſed his daughter.

Shortly afterwards, the lord de Roye himſelf married the daughter of the lord de Ville and de Floron in Hainault.

The other knights, that is to ſay, the lord de Tannaybouton, ſir Otho de Grantſon, and ſir John de Grinieres obtained their liberties, and compounded in a handſome manner for their ranſom with ſir Oliver de Mauny.

CHAP. LII.

SEVERAL TOWNS IN GASCONY SURRENDER TO THE KING OF FRANCE.—SIR HUGH DE CHASTILLON RETURNS FROM PRISON.—THE CASTLE OF BECHEREL SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.

WHEN the middle of Auguſt approached, which was the appointed time for the meeting before Monſac, the duke of Anjou arrived with a grand array of men at arms. He fixed his quarters in the plain before Monſac, where he was lodged for ſix days without any one coming to meet him. The Engliſh thought that the truce which had been entered into would have annulled this agreement. But the duke of Anjou and his council did not conſider it in this light. Sir Thomas Felton,

Felton, ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux, argued the matter for a long time; but he could not gain any thing.

The duke, therefore, ſent to the count de Foix, the viſcount de Châtel Bon, to the lords de Marſen, de Chateauneuf, de l'Eſcut, and to the abbot de St. Silvier, to ſummon them to keep their agreements, or he would put to death their hoſtages, and enter their lands in ſuch a manner as would oblige them to throw themſelves on his mercy.

Theſe lords, therefore, placed themſelves and their lands under the obedience of the king of France. The inhabitants of Monſac opened their gates, and preſented the keys to the duke of Anjou, doing to him fealty and homage. The lords who attended the duke entered the town with him, where they remained for eighteen days; during which time they held councils as to what part they ſhould next march.

Shortly after the middle of Auguſt, when the truces which had been entered into between the Engliſh and French in Gaſcony were expired, theſe lords recommenced the war. The duke of Anjou came before la Réole*; and, after three days ſiege, the inhabitants ſubmitted to the king of France. From thence he marched to Langon†, which alſo

* La Réole,—a town in Bazadois, eighteen leagues and a half from Bourdeaux.

† Langon,—a town in Bazadois, ſix leagues from Bourdeaux.

ſurrendered; as did St. Macaire*, Condom†, Baſille‡, la Tour de Prudenec, Meuléon§, and la Tour de Drou. Full forty towns and caſtles turned to the French in this expediton: the laſt was Auberoche¶. The duke of Anjou placed in all of them men at arms and garriſons: and, when he had arranged every thing according to his pleaſure, he and the conſtable returned to Paris, for the king had ſent for them.

He diſmiſſed, therefore, the greater part of his army: and the lords de Cliſſon, de Beaumanoir, d'Avaugour, de Ray, de Riom, the viſcounts de la Val, de Rohan, and the other barons, returned to the ſiege of Becherel, to be ready at the time appointed; for it was reported that the duke of Brittany, ſir Robert Knolles and the lord de Spencer would attempt to raiſe the ſiege.

You have before heard how ſir Hugh de Châtillon, maſter of the croſs bows, had been made priſoner near Abbeville, by ſir Nicholas Louvain, and carried into England: he was unable to obtain his liberty on account of the large ſum aſked for his ranſom: however, a Flemiſh merchant ſtepped forward, and exerted himſelf ſo effectually that he

---

* St. Macaire,—nine leagues from Bourdeaux.

† Condom, a city of Gaſcony, four leagues from the Garonne.

‡ Baſille. Not in Gazetteer.

§ Mauléon, a town in Armagnac, dioceſe of Aire.

¶ Auberoche,—a town in Perigord, near Perigueux.

cunningly

cunningly got him out of England. It would take too much time to enter into the whole detail of this buſineſs: therefore, I ſhall paſs it over.

When he was returned to France, the king gave him back his office of maſter of the croſs-bows, and ſent him to Abbeville, as he had before done, to guard that frontier, with two hundred lances under his command. All the captains of caſtles and towns were ordered to obey him; ſuch as ſir John de Berthouilliers governor of Boulogne, ſir Henry des Iſles governor of Dieppe, and thoſe who commanded in the frontier towns of Terouenne, St. Omer, Liques, Fiennes and Montroye.

It happened that the lord de Gommegines, governor of Ardres, and ſir John d'Ubrues, collected their forces in Ardres, to the amount of about eight hundred lances. They marched, one morning early, well mounted, towards Boulogne, to ſee if they ſhould meet with any adventures.

That ſame morning, ſir John de Berthouilliers, governor of Boulogne, had alſo made an excurſion, with about ſixty lances, towards Calais, and with the ſame intent. On his return, he was met by the lord de Gommegines and his party, who immediately charged the French, and overthrew them, ſo that their captain ſaved himſelf with great difficulty, but loſt fourteen of his lancemen. The lord de Gommegines, after the purſuit, returned to Ardres.

The maſter of the croſs-bows this day made a

muſter of his forces: he had with him a great number of men at arms from Artois, Vermandois, and from that neighbourhood: in all, upwards of three hundred lances.

The count de St. Pol, who had lately come to Picardy from his eſtates in Lorraine, was on his road to fulfil a pilgrimage to our Lady of Boulogne: he was informed on his way, that the maſter of the croſs-bows was about to undertake an excurſion, which made him wiſh to be of the party: they therefore rode together and advanced before Ardres, where they remained drawn up for ſome time; but they knew nothing of the Engliſh being abroad, nor the Engliſh of them.

After the French had continued ſome time before Ardres, and ſaw that none attempted to ſally from the town, they began their retreat towards the abbey of Liques. No ſooner had they marched away than an Engliſhman privately left the place, and rode through lanes and croſs-roads (for he knew the country well) until he met the lord de Gommegines and his party returning to Ardres, who, when he learnt the expedition of the French, ſlowly advanced with his men in a compact body.

When the French had paſſed Tournehem, having alſo had intelligence of the Engliſh being abroad under the command of the governor of Ardres, they immediately marched towards them, and placed an ambuſcade in a coppice, above Liques, of three hundred lances, of which ſir Hugh de Châtillon

Châtillon was the captain. The young count de St. Pol was ordered forward on the look-out, and with him went many knights and ſquires.

Not far diſtant, by the ſide of a large hedge, the lord de Gommegines and ſir Walter Ukeues* had halted, and drawn up their force on foot in a very handſome manner. Sir John Harleſtone ſet off on a gallop, with twenty lances, to entice the French into this ambuſcade, ſaying he would allow himſelf to be purſued to the place where they were: he therefore entered the plain.

The young count de St. Pol, who was arrived thither with a hundred lances, ſpying ſir John Harleſtone's troop, called out to his companions, 'Forward, forward! here are our enemies.' Upon which they ſtuck ſpurs into their horſes, and haſtened as faſt as they could to come up with the Engliſh. But ſir John Harleſtone began his retreat, allowing them to purſue him until he came to the hedge where the Engliſh were drawn up, with their archers in front.

On the arrival of the French, the Engliſh received them with battle-axes, ſwords and ſpears; the archers began ſo briſk an attack that men and horſes were overthrown. Many gallant deeds were done; but in the end the French were ſurrounded, and the greater part ſlain. The young count de St. Pol was made priſoner by a ſquire of Gueldres; the lords de Pons and de Clary, ſir William de

* He is before called ſir John d'Ubruues.

Nielle, ſir Charles de Châtillon, Leonnet d'Araines, Guy de Yaiſnel, Henry des Iſles and John his brother, the châtelain de Beauvais and ſeveral other knights and ſquires were alſo captured.

Shortly after this defeat, the lord de Châtillon came, with his banner and three hundred lances, to the path of the hedge; but, when he ſaw that his men were defeated, he wheeled about with his troops, and returned without ſtriking a blow: upon this, the Engliſh and Hainaulters led their priſoners to the town of Ardres.

The lord de Gommegines, that evening, bought the count de St. Pol from the ſquire who had taken him: he ſoon after carried him to England, and preſented him to the king, who thanked him kindly for ſo doing, and made him great preſents.

When the duke of Anjou and the conſtable were returned to Paris from Gaſcony, they found the archbiſhop of Rouen and the biſhop of Carpentras had been ſome time with the king. Theſe prelates continued their journey, and arrived at St. Omer. The duke of Lancaſter and the lord Bacinier had croſſed the ſea to Calais, and from thence went to Bruges. The duke of Anjou ſoon after came to St. Omer in grand array, and ſent for his couſin ſir Guy de Blois to meet him, who left Hainault handſomely equipped to wait on the duke.

The conſtable of France, the lords de Clifſon, de la Val, and ſir Oliver de Maunny, with upwards of ſix hundred lances, had poſted themſelves on the

the frontiers between France and Flanders, near to Aire, la Croix, Bailleul, Caſſel, and in that neighbourhood, to guard the country, and to prevent any injury being offered to the count of Flanders; for he had not any great confidence in the negotiators, nor would he go to Bruges notwithſtanding their earneſt ſolicitations.

You have before heard how the garriſon of Becherel had held out for upwards of a year, and had entered into a capitulation to ſurrender, if they were not relieved before All-ſaints-day. When the day was near approaching, the king of France ordered thither many men at arms: and all the knights of Brittany and Normandy were entreated to be there, except ſuch as were with the conſtable. The two marſhals of France, the lord Louis de Sancerre and lord Mouton de Blainville, the earl of Harcourt, ſir James de Vienne admiral of France, the dauphin of Auvergne, ſir John de Bueil and ſeveral more arrived before Becherel. Theſe lords kept the day with great ſolemnity; but as none appeared to relieve the caſtle, it was ſurrendered, and thoſe who were ſo inclined left it. Sir John Appleyard and ſir John Cornwall marched out with their men, embarked and croſſed over to England. The barons of France took poſſeſſion of the place, which they repaired, re-victualled and reinforced with men, proviſion and artillery.

By orders from the king of France, theſe men at arms ſhortly after laid ſiege to St. Sauveur le

Vicomte in Coutantin, which had belonged to ſir John Chandos; and after his death the king of England had given it to ſir Aleyne Boxhull, who at that time was in England: he had left there as governor a ſquire called Carenton*, with ſir Thomas Cornet, John de Burgh, and the three brothers Maulevriers: there might be with them about ſix ſcore companions, all armed and ready for defence. St. Sauveur was firſt beſieged on the ſide next the ſea by ſir John de Vienne admiral of France, with all the barons and knights of Brittany and Normandy. There was alſo a large army before it, with plenty of every thing. Theſe lords of France had pointed large engines againſt it, which much harraſſed the garriſon.

* Probably Carrington.

CHAP. LIII.

A TRUCE AGREED ON AT BRUGES BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—THE DUKE OF BRITTANY RETIRES TO HIS OWN COUNTRY, AND REGAINS SOME OF HIS TOWNS AND CASTLES.

WE will now return to the noble negotiators at Bruges, that is to ſay, the dukes of Anjou* and Burgundy, the count de Saltzbourg, the biſhop of Amiens, the elected biſhop of Bayeux; the duke of Lancaſter, the earl of Saliſbury and the biſhop of London†. In order that no harm might happen to theſe lords, nor to their people, who were going from one to the other, it was agreed there ſhould be a truce, to laſt to the firſt of May 1375, in all the country between Calias and the river Somme; but that it ſhould not interfere with the other parts of the country now at war. Upon this being done, the lords de Cliſſon and de la

* The hiſtorian of Languedoc ſays, the duke of Anjou was not preſent at this meeting, but in Avignon; and that, when the treaty was concluded, the duke of Burgundy ſent from Bruges orders for the ſénéſchal of Beaucaire to publiſh it.—Vol. iv. p. 357.

Paſſports were, however, granted to the duke of Anjou, by Edward, to come to Bruges.—RYMER.

† In addition, there were, ſir John Cobham, ſir Frank van Hall, ſir Arnold Savage, and maſter John Shepeye and maſter Simon Multon, doctors of laws.—See their warrant in Rymer.

Val

Val were ſent back to Brittany with their forces, to aſſiſt in guarding that country and the neighbouring frontiers.

During the time theſe negotiations were going forward at Bruges, the duke of Brittany, as has been before ſaid, remained in England, where he felt much for the diſtreſs of his country, the greater part of which had turned againſt him: his ducheſs alſo was beſieged and ſhut up in the caſtle of Auray. The duke, while he reſided with the king of England, was very melancholy: upon which the king, who much loved him, ſaid; 'Fair ſon, I well know that through your affection to me, you have put into the balance, and riſked, a handſome and noble inheritance: but be aſſured that I will recover it for you again, for I will never make peace with the French without your being reinſtated.' On hearing theſe fine promiſes, the duke bowed reſpectfully to the king and humbly thanked him.

Soon after this converſation, the duke of Brittany aſſembled at Southampton two thouſand men at arms and three thouſand archers, who all received their pay for half a year in advance, by orders from the king of England*.

* Edward nominated the earl of Cambridge conjointly with the duke of Brittany his lieutenants in France, with full powers to act as they pleaſed, without prejudice to the rights of the duke or to the patrimony of the church, dated 24th November 1374.—See Rymer.

Among

Among the commanders were the earls of Cambridge and March, the lord de Spencer, ſir Thomas Holland, ſir Nicholas Camoire, ſir Edward Twiford, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir John Leſley, ſir Thomas Grantſon, ſir Hugh Haſtings, the lords de Manne* and de la Pole, with many other knights and ſquires.

The duke and all his men at arms arrived at St. Matthieu de Fine Pôterne in Brittany, where, after they had diſembarked, they attacked the caſtle very ſharply. This caſtle was out of the town, and ill ſupplied with men and artillery, ſo that the Engliſh took it by ſtorm, and ſlew all who were in it. When the inhabitants of the town were informed of this, they opened their gates, and received the duke as their lord.

The Engliſh next advanced to the town of St. Pol de Léon, which was ſtrong and well incloſed. The duke took his ſtation; and, during a marvellouſly well conducted attack, the archers, who were poſted on the banks of the ditches, ſhot ſo excellently, and ſo much together, that ſcarcely any dared appear to defend them: the town was therefore taken and pillaged.

After this, they came before St. Brieu, which at that time was well provided with men at arms and all other proviſions and ſtores: for the lords de Cliffon, de Beaumanoir, the viſcount de Rohan, and many other barons of Brittany, whoſe quarters were at Lamballe, had lately been there and had

* Q. Maine.

reinforced

reinforced it with every thing neceſſary. The duke and the Engliſh beſieged this town.

When the garriſon of St. Sauveur le Vicomte heard that the duke of Brittany and the Engliſh lords were arrived in Brittany, they expected them to come and raiſe their ſiege; which they much deſired, for they were greatly ſtraitened by the engines, which day and night caſt ſtones into the caſtle, ſo that they knew not where to retire to avoid them. Having called a council, they reſolved to make overtures to the French lords, to obtain a truce for ſix weeks, until Eaſter 1375; and propoſed, that if within that time there ſhould not come any relief, which might be ſufficient to offer battle and raiſe the ſiege, they would ſurrender themſelves, their lives and fortunes being ſpared, and the fortreſs ſhould be given up to the king of France. This treaty went off, and the ſiege continued; but no harm was further done to thoſe of St. Sauveur, for the beſiegers and garriſon were both inactive.

CHAP. LIV.

SOME BRETON LORDS OF THE FRENCH PARTY ARE NEAR BEING TAKEN BY THE DUKE OF BRITTANY, BUT ARE DELIVERED BY THE TRUCES AT BRUGES.

THE viſcount de Rohan, the lords de Cliſſon and de Beaumanoir were guarding the frontiers againſt the duke of Brittany and the Engliſh, at that time before St. Brieu. Sir John Devereux was then quartered near to Quimperlé, and was deſtroying that part of the country: he had cauſed to be repaired and fortified by the peaſants a ſmall fort which he had made his garriſon, and called it the New Fort, in which he reſided, ſo that none could venture out of the town without riſk of being taken. This information the townſmen of Quimperlé ſent to the lord de Cliſſon and the other lords at Lamballe.

They marched immediately thither, leaving a ſufficiency of men to guard that town, and rode on until they came before this new fort, which they ſurrounded. News of this was carried to the Britiſh army before St. Brieu. The duke had ordered a mine to be ſprung, which they had worked at for fifteen days; but at that moment the miners had loſt their point, ſo that it was neceſſary for them to begin another: which when the duke and the lords of his army heard, they ſaid among themſelves;

ſelves; 'Every thing conſidered, we are but loſing time here: let us go to the aſſiſtance of ſir John Devereux, and if we ſhall be able to fall in with thoſe who are beſieging him in the open field, we ſhall perform a good exploit.' Upon this they held a council, and marched off, taking the road for the new fort, which the lords of Brittany were then aſſaulting. They had done ſo much that they were already at the foot of the walls, and dreaded not what might be thrown down upon them; for they were well ſhielded, but thoſe within the fort had not wherewithal to annoy them in that manner.

Juſt at this inſtant a ſcout came with ſpeed to to the lords of Brittany who were buſy at the aſſault, ſaying, 'My lords, make off in haſte from hence; for the Engliſh are coming with the duke of Brittany, and they are not more than two leagues off.' The trumpet ſounded a retreat: they collected themſelves together, called for their horſes, ſet off, and entered Quimperlé which was hard by. They cloſed the gates; but ſcarcely had they raiſed the draw-bridges, and ſtrengthened the barriers, when the duke of Brittany with the barons of England were before it. They had paſſed by the new fort, and ſpoken with ſir John Devereux, who thanked them exceedingly for coming, otherwiſe he muſt have been very ſhortly made priſoner.

The duke and the Engliſh formed the ſiege of Quimperlé, and ordered their archers and foot ſoldiers, well ſhielded, to advance, when a ſharp attack commenced; for the Engliſh, as well as

thoſe

thoſe in the town, were very determined: ſo that there were many wounded on both ſides. Every day there were ſuch ſkirmiſhes and aſſaults that thoſe in the town ſaw they ſhould not be able to hold out much longer, and there did not ſeem any likelihood of their receiving aſſiſtance. They could not eſcape any way without being ſeen, ſo well was the town ſurrounded: and if they ſhould be taken by ſtorm, they doubted if they ſhould receive any quarter, more eſpecially the lord de Cliſſon, for he was much hated by the Engliſh.

Theſe lords of Brittany opened a treaty with the duke to ſurrender; but they wanted to depart on a moderate ranſom, and the duke would have them ſurrender unconditionally: they could only obtain a reſpite for eight days, and that with very great difficulty. This reſpite, however, turned out very fortunate to them; for during that time two Engliſh knights, ſir Nicholas Carſwell and ſir Walter Ourſwick*, ſent by the duke of Lancaſter from Bruges, where he had remained the whole winter, arrived at the army of the duke of Brittany. They brought with them deeds engroſſed and ſealed of the truces entered into between the kings of France and England. The duke of Lancaſter ſent orders, that in conſequence of the treaty of Bruges, the army ſhould be diſbanded without delay. The truce was immediately read and proclaimed through the army, and ſignified alſo to thoſe who were within Quimperlé.

* Sir Nicholas Charnels—ſir Walter Urſwick.—BARNES.

The

The lords de Cliſſon, de Rohan and de Beaumanoir, and the others, were much rejoiced thereat, for it came very opportunely.

The ſiege of Quimperlé being raiſed, the duke of Brittany diſbanded all his troops, except thoſe of his houſehold, and went to Auray, where his ducheſs was. The earls of Cambridge and of March, ſir Thomas Holland earl of Kent, the lord de Spencer and the other Engliſh returned home.

When the duke of Brittany had ſettled his affairs at his leiſure, and had reinforced the towns and caſtles of Breſt and Auray with artillery and proviſions, he ſet out from Brittany with his ducheſs, and went for England.

CHAP. IV.

ST. SAUVEUR LE VICOMTE SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.—THE LORD DE COUCY LEADS A LARGE ARMY INTO AUSTRIA, WHICH HE CLAIMS AS HIS INHERITANCE.

ON the day in which the truces were concluded at Bruges between the kings of France and of England, to laſt for one whole year, including their allies, the dukes of Lancaſter and Burgundy again ſwore they would return thither on All-ſaint day. Each party was to keep, during this truce, whatever

whatever he was then in poſſeſſion of. The Engliſh thought that the capitulation reſpecting St. Sauveur le Vicomte would be voided by this treaty; but the French would not allow of this, and ſaid the treaty did not affect the prior engagement concerning it: ſo that, when the day arrived for its ſurrender, the king of France ſent troops thither from all quarters. There were aſſembled before it upwards of ſix thouſand knights and ſquires, without counting the others: but no ſuccour came to its relief, and when the day was expired, St. Sauveur was given up to the French, but moſt unwillingly, for the fortreſs was very convenient for the Engliſh.

The governor ſir Thomas Cornet, John de Burgh, the three brothers Maulevriers, and the Engliſh, went to Carentan, where having embarked all which belonged to them, they ſailed for England *.

The conſtable of France reinforced the town and caſtle of St. Sauveur le Vicomte with a new garriſon, and appointed a Breton knight as governor. I heard at the time, that the king of France gave him the lordſhip of it.

* Froiſſart has forgotten to add ſir Thomas Carington among the governors of St. Sauveur le Vicomte. Nothing was ſaid againſt him until the reign of Richard II. when he was accuſed of having treacherouſly given up this place by ſir John Anneſley, who had married ſir John Chandos' niece: he challenged him to ſingle combat, fought and vanquiſhed him in the liſts, formed in Palace yard in the preſence of the king. He was afterwards drawn to Tyburn, and there hanged for his treaſon.—See Dugdale, Fabian, &c.

The lord de Coucy at this period returned to France: he had been a long time in Lombardy with the count de Vertus*, ſon of the lord Galeas Viſconti, and had made war on lord Bernabo Viſconti and his allies, for the cauſe of the church and of Gregory XI. who at that time was pope, and for the holy college of Rome.

The lord de Coucy, in right of ſucceſſion to the lady his mother, who was ſiſter to the duke of Auſtria laſt deceaſed, was the true heir of that duchy. The laſt duke did not leave any child by legal marriage, and the inhabitants of Auſtria had diſpoſed of the eſtate in favour of a relation, but farther removed than the lord de Coucy. This lord had frequently complained of ſuch conduct to the emperor, the lord Charles of Bohemia.

The emperor readily acknowledged the lord de Coucy's right: but he could not compel the Auſtrians to do the ſame, who were in great force in their own country, and had plenty of men at arms. The lord de Coucy had gallantly carried on the war againſt them ſeveral times, through the aid of one of his aunts, ſiſter to the aforeſaid duke; but he had not gained much. On the lord de Coucy's return to France, the king entertained him handſomely. Having conſidered there were

* John Galeas Viſconti, firſt duke of Milan, bore the title of count de Vertus, until Wenceſlaus, king of the Romans, inveſted him with the ducal dignity 1395. He gained, by treachery, poſſeſſion of his uncle Bernabo, and put him to death by poiſon.—For further particulars, ee Muratori and Corio.

numbers

numbers of men at arms in France then idle, on account of the truce between the French and Engliſh, he entreated the king to aſſiſt him in obtaining the free companies of Bretons, who were overrunning and haraſſing the kingdom, for him to lead them into Auſtria. The king, who wiſhed theſe companies any where but in his kingdom, readily aſſented to his requeſt. He lent, or gave, I know not which, ſixty thouſand francs, in order to get rid of theſe companions. They began their march towards Auſtria about Michaelmas, committing many ravages wherever they paſſed. Many barons, knights and ſquires of France, Artois, Vermandois, Hainault and Picardy, ſuch as the viſcounts de Meaux and d'Aunay, ſir Raoul de Coucy, the baron de Roye, Pierre de Bar, and ſeveral others offered their ſervices to the lord de Coucy. His army was increaſed by all thoſe who wiſhed to advance themſelves in honour.

CHAP. LVI.

THE TRUCE BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND IS PROLONGED.—THE DEATH OF THE BLACK PRINCE.—THE LORD DE COUCY RETURNS, HAVING HAD INDIFFERENT SUCCESS.

WHEN the feaſt of All-ſaints was drawing near, the duke of Burgundy, the count de Saltzbourg, the biſhops of Amiens and of Bayeux came to Bruges by orders of the king of France, to hold a conference. The duke of Anjou ſtaid at St. Omer, where he continued the whole time.

From the king of England there came, the dukes of Lancaſter and Brittany, the earl of Saliſbury and the biſhop of London: ſo that the town of Bruges was well filled by their retinues, more eſpecially by that of the duke of Burgundy, who kept a moſt noble and grand ſtate.

Sir Robert de Namur reſided with the duke of Lancaſter, and ſhewed him every attention as long as he remained in Flanders.

The ambaſſadors from the pope, the archbiſhop of Rouen and the biſhop of Carpentras, were alſo there, who went to and fro to each party, propoſing different terms for an accommodation, but without any effect; for theſe lords, in their firſt parley, were too much divided to come to any agreement. The king of France demanded re-payment of fourteen hundred thouſand francs which had been given for

for king John's ranſom, and that the town of Calais ſhould be diſmantled. This the king of England would never conſent to. The truces were therefore prolonged until the feaſt of St. John the Baptiſt in the year 1376. The lords remained all that winter in Bruges, and ſome time longer. In the ſummer, each returned to his own country, except the duke of Brittany; he continued in Flanders with his couſin the count Louis, who entertained him handſomely.

In this year, on Trinity-Sunday, that flower of Engliſh knighthood the lord Edward of England, prince of Wales and of Aquitaine, departed this life in the palace of Weſtminſter near London. His body was embalmed, placed in a leaden coffin, and kept until the enſuing Michaelmas, in order that he might be buried with greater pomp and magnificence when the parliament aſſembled in London*.

King Charles of France, on account of his lineage, had funeral ſervice for the prince performed with great magnificence, in the holy chapel of the palace in Paris, which was attended, according to the king's orders, by many prelates and nobles of the realm of France.

The truces, through the mediation of the ambaſſadors, were again prolonged until the firſt day of April.

* The prince of Wales was buried in the cathedral at Canterbury.—For particulars, ſee Mr. Gough's Sepulchral Monuments.

We will now ſay ſomething of the lord de Coucy and the Germans. When thoſe of Auſtria and Germany heard that he was advancing with ſo ſtrong a force to carry on the war againſt them, they burnt and deſtroyed three days march of country by the river ſide, and then they retreated to their mountains and inacceſſible places.

The men at arms, of whom the lord de Coucy was the leader, expected to find plenty of forage, but they met with nothing: they ſuffered all this winter very great diſtreſs, and knew not in what place to ſeek proviſion for themſelves, or forage for their horſes, who were dying of cold, hunger and diſorders: for this reaſon, when ſpring came, they returned to France, and ſeparated into different troops to recruit themſelves. The king of France ſent the greater part of the companies into Brittany and lower Normandy, as he imagined he ſhould have occaſion for their ſervices.

The lord de Coucy, on his return into France, began to think of becoming a good and true Frenchman; for he had found the king of France very kind and attentive to his concerns. His relationſhip to the king made him conſider it was not worth his while to riſk the loſs of his inheritance, for ſo ſlender a reaſon as the war with the king of England; for he was a Frenchman by name, arms, blood and extraction. He therefore ſent the lady his wife to England, and kept with him only the eldeſt of his two daughters: the youngeſt had been left in England, where ſhe had been educated.

The

The king of France ſent the lord de Coucy to attend the negotiations carrying on at Bruges, which continued all the winter. None of the great lords were there, except the duke of Brittany, who had ſtaid with his couſin the count of Flanders; but he entered very little into the buſineſs.

CHAP. LVII.

RICHARD, SON OF THE PRINCE OF WALES, IS ACKNOWLEDGED AS PRESUMPTIVE HEIR TO THE CROWN OF ENGLAND.—THE NEGOTIATIONS FOR PEACE HAVING FAILED, AND THE TRUCES EXPIRED, THE WAR IS RENEWED BETWEEN THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

AFTER the feaſt of Michaelmas, when the funeral of the prince had been performed in a manner ſuitable to his birth and merit, the king of England cauſed the young prince Richard to be acknowledged as his ſucceſſor to the crown after his deceaſe, by all his children, the duke of Lancaſter, the earl of Cambridge, the lord Thomas his youngeſt ſon, as well as by all the barons, earls, prelates and knights of England. He made them ſolemnly ſwear to obſerve this; and on Chriſtmas-day he had him ſeated next to himſelf, above all his children, in royal ſtate, that

it might be ſeen and declared he was to be king of England after his death.

The lord John Cobham, the biſhop of Hereford and the dean of London were at this time ſent to Bruges on the part of the Engliſh. The French had ſent thither the count de Saltzbourg, the lord de Châtillon and maſter Philibert l'Eſpiote. The prelates, ambaſſadors from the pope, had ſtill remained there, and continued the negotiations for peace.

They treated of a marriage between the young ſon of the prince and the lady Mary, daughter of the king of France: after which the negotiators of each party ſeparated, and reported what they had done to their reſpective kings.

About Shrovetide, a ſecret treaty was formed between the two kings for their ambaſſadors to meet at Montrieul ſur mer; and the king of England ſent to Calais ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Richard Sturey and ſir Geoffry Chaucer. On the part of the French were, the lords de Coucy and de la Rivieres, ſir Nicholas Bragues and Nicholas Bracier. They for a long time diſcuſſed the ſubject of the above marriage; and the French, as I was informed, made ſome offers, but the others demanded different terms, or refuſed treating. Theſe lords returned therefore, with their treaties, to their ſovereigns; and the truces were prolonged to the firſt of May.

The earl of Saliſbury, the biſhop of St. David's chancellor of England, and the biſhop of Hereford, returned

returned to Calais; and with them, by orders of the king of France, the lord de Coucy, and ſir William de Dormans chancellor of France.

Notwithſtanding all that the prelates could ſay or argue, they never could be brought to fix upon any place to diſcuſs theſe treaties between Montrieul and Calais, nor between Montrieul and Boulogne, nor on any part of the frontiers; theſe treaties, therefore, remained in an unfiniſhed ſtate. When the war recommenced, ſir Hugh Calverley was ſent governor of Calais.

CHAP. LVIII.

POPE GREGORY XI. LEAVES AVIGNON, AND RETURNS TO ROME.—ON THE DEATH OF EDWARD III. RICHARD, SON OF THE LATE PRINCE OF WALES, IS CROWNED KING OF ENGLAND.

WHEN pope Gregory XI. who had for a long time reſided at Avignon, was informed there was not any probability of a peace being concluded between the two kings, he was very melancholy, and, having arranged his affairs, ſet out for Rome, to hold there his ſeat of government.

The

The duke of Brittany, finding the war was to be renewed, took leave of his couſin the count of Flanders, with whom he had reſided upwards of a year, and rode towards Gravelines, where the earl of Saliſbury and ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, with a body of men at-arms and archers, came to meet him, to eſcort him to Calais, where the duke tarried a month: he then croſſed over to England and went to Shene, a few miles from London, on the river Thames, where the king of England lay dangerouſly ill: he departed this life the vigil of St. John the Baptiſt, in the year 1377.

Upon this event, England was in deep mourning. Immediately all the paſſes were ſhut, ſo that no one could go out of the country; for they did not wiſh the death of the king ſhould be known in France, until they had ſettled the government of the kingdom, The earl of Saliſbury and ſir Guiſcard d'Angle returned at this time to England.

The body of king Edward was carried in grand proceſſion, followed by his children in tears, and by the nobles and prelates of England, through the city of London, with his face uncovered, to Weſtminſter, where he was buried by the ſide of his lady the queen.

Shortly afterward, in the month of July, the young king Richard, who was in his eleventh year, was crowned with great ſolemnity at the palace of Weſtminſter: he was ſupported by the dukes of Lancaſter and Brittany. He created

that

that day four earls and nine knights; namely, his uncle the lord Thomas of Woodſtock earl of Buckingham, the lord Percy earl of Northumberland, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle earl of Huntingdon, and the lord Mowbray earl of Nottingham.

The young king was placed under the tutorſhip of that accompliſhed knight ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, with the approbation of all, to inſtruct him in the paths of virtue and honour. The duke of Lancaſter had the government of the kingdom.

As ſoon as the king of France learnt the death of king Edward, he ſaid, that he had reigned moſt nobly and valiantly, and that his name ought to be remembered with honour among heroes. Many nobles and prelates of his realm were aſſembled, to perform his obſequies with due reſpect, in the holy chapel of the palace at Paris.

Shortly after, madame, the eldeſt daughter of the king of France, died. She had been betrothed to that gallant youth William of Hainault, eldeſt ſon of duke Albert.

CHAP. LIX.

THE KING OF FRANCE EQUIPS FOR SEA A LARGE FLEET, WHICH BURNS SEVERAL TOWNS IN ENGLAND.

DURING the negotiations for peace, the king of France had been very active in providing ſhips and galleys: the king of Spain had ſent him his admiral, ſir Fernando Sauſſe, who, with ſir John de Vienne, admiral of France, had ſailed for the port of Rye, which they burnt, five days after the deceaſe of king Edward, the vigil of St. Peter, in June, and put to death the inhabitants, without ſparing man or woman.

Upon the news of this event coming to London, the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham were ordered to Dover with a large body of men at arms. The earl of Saliſbury and ſir John Mountague, on the other hand, were ſent to the country near Southampton.

After this exploit, the French landed in the iſle of Wight. They afterwards burnt the following towns: Portſmouth, Dartmouth, Plymouth, and ſeveral others. When they had pillaged and burnt all in the iſle of Wight, they embarked and put to ſea, coaſting the ſhores until they came to a port called Poq*.

* Q. if not Pool.

The

The earl of Saliſbury and ſir John Mountague defended the paſſage, but they burnt a part of the town of Poq. They again embarked, and coaſted towards Southampton, attempting every day to land; but the earl of Saliſbury and his forces, who followed them along the ſhore, prevented them from ſo doing.

The fleet then came before Southampton; but ſir John Arundel, with a large body of men at arms and archers, guarded well the town, otherwiſe it would have been taken. The French made ſail from thence towards Dover, and landed near to the abbey of Lewes, where there were great numbers of the people of the country aſſembled. They appointed the abbot of Lewes, ſir Thomas Cheney and ſir John Fuſelée their leaders, who drew up in good array to diſpute their landing, and to defend the country. The French had not the advantage, but loſt ſeveral of their men, as well might happen. However, the better to maintain the fight, they made the land, when a grand ſkirmiſh enſued, and the Engliſh, being forced to retreat, were finally put to flight. Two hundred at leaſt were ſlain, and the two knights, with the abbot of Lewes, made priſoners.

The French re-embarked, and remained at anchor before the abbey all that night. They then heard for the firſt time, from their priſoners, the death of king Edward and the coronation of king Richard, and alſo a part of the regulations of the kingdom, and that great numbers

bers of men at arms were under orders to march to the coaſt.

Sir John de Vienne diſpatched a ſloop to Havre, where there was a knight in waiting, who immediately rode to Paris to the king, and reported to him ſuch intelligence reſpecting the death of king Edward that he was convinced of its truth.

The French and Spaniards put to ſea, and having the wind favourable, came with an eaſy ſail that ſame tide about the hour of nine, before Dover. They amounted in all to about ſix ſcore galleys. At that time there were in Dover the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham, with immenſe numbers of men at arms and archers, who, with a hundred thouſand common men, were waiting for the arrival of the French, drawn up before the port with diſplayed banners, for they had ſeen them at a diſtance, and they were continually joined by people from the country who had noticed this large fleet.

The French came before the harbour, but did not enter it, making for deep water, as the tide began to ebb. Notwithſtanding this, the Engliſh continued ſtrict guard all that day and following night.

The French who were on the ſea came with the next tide before Calais, to the great ſurpriſe of the inhabitants, who cloſed their gates againſt them.

CHAP. LX.

THE TOWN OF ARDRES SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.—THE DEATHS OF THE CAPTAL DE BUCH AND OF THE QUEEN OF FRANCE.

WHILE theſe things were paſſing ſir Hugh Calverley governor of Calais, ſir John Harleſtone governor of Guines, and the lord de Gommegines governor of Ardres, made very frequent excurſions into Picardy; three or four in every week. They advanced often before St. Omer, Arques, Mouton, Fiennes, and the towns in that neighbourhood, as well as to Boulogne and near to Terouenne, which were particularly moleſted by the garriſon of Ardres. Complaints of them had frequently been made to the king of France. On aſking how this was to be prevented, he was anſwered, 'Sire, the garriſon of Ardres is not ſo ſtrong but it may be won.' The king replied, 'Have it then we will, whatever it may coſt us.' He ſoon after iſſued a ſecret ſummons, and it was not gueſſed to what part he intended ſending this army, of which he made the duke of Burgundy general. There were in it twenty-five hundred lances of good and hardy men. They marched ſuddenly to the caſtle of Ardres, which they inveſted.

With the duke of Burgundy were the count de Guines, the marſhal de Blainville, the lords de Cliſſon and de la Val, de Rougemont, de la Riviere,

Riviere, de Bregide, de Frainville, d'Ainville, d'Ancoing, de Rayneval, and d'Angeſt, ſir James de Bourbon, the ſéneſchal of Hainault, with many other knights and barons. They had with them machines that caſt ſtones of two hundred weight, with which they made a moſt vigorous aſſault.

The lord de Gommegines, captain of the caſtle, was aſtoniſhed to ſee himſelf ſurrounded by ſuch numbers of gallant men at arms, who ſeemed determined, that if the place were taken by ſtorm, they would ſpare no one they ſhould find within it. As he was not provided with artillery for a long ſiege, through the mediation of his couſin-german, the lord de Rayneval, he offered to enter into a treaty for ſurrendering the place, on condition of their lives and fortunes being ſpared. This treaty was long debated; but at length the caſtle was ſurrendered, and all who choſe it departed, and were conducted by ſir Walter de Bailleul to the town of Calais.

Sir William des Bordes was appointed governor of Ardres: he was ſucceeded by the viſcount de Meaux, who remained there a long time: the third governor was the lord de Saimpy.

The ſame day that Ardres ſurrendered, the duke laid ſiege to the caſtle of Ardvick, which the three brothers Maulevriers held for England. During the three days he ſtaid there, many ſkirmiſhes paſſed; but they at laſt ſurrendered, and the garriſon was conducted to Calais by the marſhal of France.

After this the duke beſieged Vauclignen, which

alſo ſurrendered on the ſame terms as the others had done: and, when the duke had re-victualled and reinforced them with men at arms and croſs-bows, he diſbanded his army and returned to the king at Paris. The Breton lords went to Brittany, for they had heard that the duke of Brittany had arrived at Breſt with a large army. The barons of Burgundy and the others returned to their own homes.

You have before heard how the lord John captal de Buch, having been made priſoner before Soubiſe, was confined in the Temple at Paris. The king of England and his ſon greatly deſired his liberty, and it had been much debated at the negotiations at Bruges: they would willingly have given in exchange for him the young count de St. Pol and three or four other knights: but the king of France and his council would not conſent. The king had him informed through the grand prior, who had the guard of him, that if he would ſwear never to bear arms againſt the crown of France, he would liſten to terms for his liberty. The captal replied, that he would never make this oath, though he were to die in priſon. He remained therefore ſtrictly guarded for five years in confinement, to his great diſcomfort; for he bore it ſo impatiently that at laſt he died*.

* The prince of Wales gave to the captal de Buch, and his male heirs, the county of Bigorre, with all its towns, &c. the 7th June 1369. Confirmed by the king.—RYMER.

The king of France had him interred; and a ſolemn ſervice was performed, which was attended by the barons, prelates and nobles of France.

England was thus loſing her great captains; for, in this ſame year, the lord de Spencer, a great banneret of England, died. He left iſſue by his lady, the daughter of the late ſir Bartholomew Burgherſh, one ſon and four daughters.

Soon after the death of that gallant knight the captal de Buch, the queen of France was brought to bed of a daughter, who was named Catherine; and, whilſt in childbed, the queen was ſeized with an illneſs that cauſed her death. This amiable queen was daughter of the valiant duke of Bourbon, killed at the battle of Poitiers. Her obſequies were performed in the abbey of St. Denis, where ſhe was buried with great ſolemnity, to which were invited all the nobles and prelates of France in the neighbourhood of Paris.

CHAP. LXI.

THE WAR RECOMMENCES BETWEEN THE KING OF FRANCE AND THE KING OF NAVARRE.—THE SIEGE OF CHERBOURG.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER INVADES BRITTANY.—THE CASTLE OF AURAY SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.

SINCE the peace made at Vernon between the kings of France and Navarre, as has been before related, and ſince the king of Navarre had left

left his two children with their uncle the king of France, ſuſpicions had fallen on a ſquire of the king's houſehold. He had been placed there by the king of Navarre at the time he left his children: his name was James de la Rue. A lawyer, who was one of the king of Navarre's council, and his chancellor in the county of Evreux, was alſo implicated in this buſineſs: the name of this chancellor was maſter Peter du Tertre.

Theſe two men were cruelly executed at Paris, and acknowledged, before all the people, that they had intended to have poiſoned the king of France. The king immediately collected a large army, the command of which he gave to the conſtable: there were with him the lord de la Riviere and many other barons and knights. They marched into Normandy, to attack the caſtles of the king of Navarre, which were ſtrong and well garriſoned, and laid ſiege to one of them called Pont au demer*. The French had with them many cannon, and various engines and machines, with which, in the courſe of different aſſaults, they preſſed the garriſon hard; but they defended themſelves valiantly. Though there were many attacks and ſkirmiſhes, the ſiege laſted a long time: the caſtle was much ruined, and the garriſon hard puſhed. They were frequently required by the conſtable to ſurrender, or they would all be put to death, if the place were taken by ſtorm: this

* Pont au demer,—a town in Normandy, on the Rille, 41 leagues from Paris.

was the threat which the conſtable was accuſtomed to make.

The men of Navarre ſeeing their proviſions decreaſe, and finding themſelves much weakened, without any hopes of aſſiſtance from their king, who was at too great a diſtance, ſurrendered the caſtle, and were conducted to Cherbourg, carrying with them all their plunder.

This caſtle was razed to the ground, though it had coſt large ſums to erect; and the walls and towers of Pont au demer were levelled with the ground.

The French then advanced to beſiege the fortreſs of Mortain*, where they remained ſome time; but the garriſon, ſeeing no appearance of aſſiſtance from the king of Navarre, and that the other Navarre fortreſſes were too weak to reſiſt the French, ſurrendered themſelves on the ſame conditions with thoſe of Pont au demer.

You moſt know, that in this expedition, the conſtable put under the obedience of the king of France all the towns, caſtles and forts in the county of Evreux: the caſtles and principal towns were diſmantled, that from henceforward no war ſhould be carried on againſt the kingdom of France from any town or caſtle which the king of Navarre held in the county of Evreux.

The king of France eſtabliſhed in them the gabelle and ſubſidies, in like manner as they were in the realm of France.

* Mortain,—a town in Normandy, 71 leagues from Paris.

On

On the other hand, the king of Spain had ordered his brother, the baſtard of Spain, to enter Navarre with a powerful army: he attacked towns and caſtles, and gained much country, in ſpite of the king of Navarre, who could do but little to defend himſelf. He ſent to inform king Richard of England how he was ſituated, in the hope that he would aid him in oppoſing the king of France in his county of Evreux; for that he himſelf would remain in Navarre, to guard his fortreſſes againſt the king of Spain.

King Richard, in conſequence of a council which had been called on this buſineſs, ſent ſir Robert le Roux* with a body of men at arms and archers, to Cherbourg. The garriſons of the different fortreſſes won by the conſtable in the county of Evreux were alſo collected at that town.

When all were aſſembled, they were a numerous and handſome body of picked men, who had provided the caſtle with ſtores, for they concluded it would be beſieged.

The conſtable and the lord de la Riviere, having viſited every place in the county of Evreux with their army, found that all the towns formerly belonging to the king of Navarre were now under the obedience of the king of France: they then came before Cherbourg, which is a ſtrong and noble place, founded by Julius Cæſar, when he conquered England, and likewiſe a ſea-port.

* Probably ſir Robert Rooſe, or Rouſe.

The French beſieged it on all ſides except that of the ſea, and took up their quarters in ſuch a manner before it as ſhewed they were determined not to quit until they had conquered it. Sir Robert le Roux and his forces made frequent ſallies, for neither night nor day paſſed without ſkirmiſhing. The French could never form a wiſh for feats of arms but there were always ſome ready to gratify it. Many combats took place with lance and ſword, and ſeveral were killed or taken priſoners on each ſide, during this ſiege, which laſted the whole ſummer.

Sir Oliver du Gueſclin poſted himſelf in an ambuſcade near the caſtle: he then ordered his men to begin a ſkirmiſh, in which the French were repulſed by the Engliſh, and driven back as far as the ambuſcade of ſir Oliver, who immediately ruſhed out with his troop, ſword in hand, and advanced boldly on the enemy, like men well practiſed in arms.

The encounter was ſharp on both ſides, and many a man was unhorſed, killed, wounded, or made priſoner: at laſt, ſir Oliver du Gueſclin was taken, and avowed himſelf a priſoner to a Navarrois ſquire, called John le Coq, an able man at arms: he was dragged into Cherbourg. The ſkirmiſh was now over, more to the loſs of the French than of the Engliſh. Sir Oliver was ſent to England, where he remained priſoner for a long time in London, and was at laſt ranſomed.

The French remained before Cherbourg, at a heavy expenſe, the greater part of the winter, without

without having gained much. They thought they were loſing time, and that Cherbourg was impregnable, as all ſorts of reinforcements, men at arms, proviſion and ſtores, might be introduced into it by ſea; for which reaſon the French broke up their camp, and placed ſtrong garriſons in the places round Cherbourg, ſuch as Montbourg, Pont Doue, Carentan, St. Lo, and in St. Sauveur le Vicomte. The conſtable then diſbanded his army, and every one returned to the place whence he came. This was in the year 1378.

You have before heard how the duke of Brittany had left that country, and had carried his ducheſs with him to England. He reſided at the eſtate he had there, which was called the honour of Richmond, and took great pains to obtain aſſiſtance from the young king, Richard, to reconquer his duchy, which had turned to the French, but he was not liſtened to. At length the duke of Lancaſter was informed, that if he landed in Brittany with a good army, there were ſome ſorts and caſtles that would ſurrender to him: in particular, St. Malo, a handſome fortreſs, and a ſea-port town. Upon this, the duke of Lancaſter, having raiſed a large army, went to Southampton. He there prepared his veſſels and ſtores, and embarked with many lords, men at arms and archers.

This fleet had favourable winds to St. Malo; and when near the ſhore, having landed and diſembarked their ſtores, they advanced towards the town, and cloſely beſieged it. The inhabitants were not much alarmed, for they were well pro-

vided with proviſion, men at arms and croſs-bows, who valiantly defended themſelves, ſo that the duke remained there a conſiderable time.

When the conſtable of France and the lord de Cliſſon heard of this, they ſent ſummonſes every where, and marched to St. Malo to raiſe the ſiege. Many thought that a battle muſt enſue; and the Engliſh drew out their army ſeveral times in battle-array, ready for the combat; but the conſtable and the lord de Cliſſon never came near enough for an engagement.

The Engliſh, therefore, having lain before the town ſome time, and not perceiving any inclination in the inhabitants to ſurrender, the duke of Lancaſter was adviſed to decamp, for he ſaw it was only waſting time: he therefore re-embarked, and returned to England, where he diſmiſſed his army.

The caſtle of Auray was ſtill in the poſſeſſion of the duke of Brittany, who reſided quietly in England: the king of France ſent thither ſeveral lords of France and Brittany, who began a ſiege which laſted a long time. The garriſon of Auray, not ſeeing any hope of ſuccour, entered into a treaty, that if they were not relieved by the duke of Brittany or the king of England, with a ſufficient force to raiſe the ſiege on a certain day, they would ſurrender. This treaty was acceded to; and when the appointed day arrived, the French were there, but no one came from the duke nor the king of England: the caſtle was therefore placed under the obedience of the king

of

of France in the ſame manner as the other caſtles and principal towns of Brittany; and thoſe of Auray, who were attached to the duke departed thence.

CHAP. LXII.

THE FRENCH GARRISON OF MONTBOURG IS DEFEATED BY THE ENGLISH AT CHERBOURG.

SOON after Eaſter, in the year of our Lord 1379, king Charles of France, finding the garriſon of Cherbourg was oppreſſing the whole country of Coutantin, appointed ſir William des Bourdes, a valiant knight and good captain, to be chief governor of Coutantin, and of all the fortreſſes round Cherbourg.

Sir William des Bourdes went thither with a handſome body of men at arms and Genoeſe croſsbows, and fixed his quarters at Montbourg; which he made a garriſon againſt Cherbourg; whence he formed frequent expeditions, and would willingly have met with the men of Cherbourg; for he wiſhed for nothing better than an engagement with them, as he felt himſelf a good knight, bold and enterpriſing, and had alſo under his command the flower of the men at arms from all the adjacent garriſons.

About the ſame time, ſir John Harleſtone was ſent to Cherbourg, to take command of it. I have

have before mentioned him as having been governor of Guines. He had embarked at Southampton with three hundred men at arms and as many archers, and with them had ſafely arrived at Cherbourg. There were in this army ſir Otho de Grantſon*, and among the Engliſh ſir John Aubourc†, ſir John Orcelle‡, with other knights and ſquires.

On their arrival, they diſembarked their horſes and armour, with other ſtores, and remained ſome days in Cherbourg to recruit themſelves, and make preparations for expeditions and for carrying on the war in earneſt.

Sir William des Bourdes puzzled himſelf day and night in endeavouring to find out ſome means of annoying them. You muſt know, that theſe two governors laid ſeveral ambuſcades for each other, but with little effect: for by chance they never met, except ſome few companions, who adventured themſelves fool-hardily, as well to acquire honour as gain: theſe parties frequently attacked each other: ſometimes the French won, at others they loſt.

Such ſkirmiſhes continued ſo often that ſir William des Bourdes marched out one morning from Montbourg, with his whole force, towards

---

* Sir Otho de Grantſon—was before mentioned, not as an Engliſhman, but as one who had an eſtate on the other ſide of the ſea.

† Sir John Aubeurc. May it not be Aubrey.

‡ Sir John Orcelle. Perhaps Worſley, or Horſeley.

Cher-

Cherbourg, in hopes of drawing that garriſon out into the plain.

On the other hand, ſir John Harleſtone, who was ignorant of the intentions of the French, had alſo that ſame morning made an excurſion, and had commanded his trumpets to ſound for his men to arm themſelves, as well horſe as foot, and to advance into the plain: he had already ordered who were to remain in the garriſon. He marched forth in handſome diſplay, and ordered ſir John Orcelle, with his foot ſoldiers, to take the lead as their guide. Having done this, he ſent forward his light troops. Sir William des Bourdes had made a ſimilar arrangement of his army. They both advanced in this array until the light troops of each party met, and came ſo near that they could eaſily diſtinguiſh each other. Upon which, they returned to the main body, and reported all they had obſerved.

The two leaders, on hearing their reports, were quite happy; for they had at laſt found what they had been ſeeking for, and were much rejoiced thus to meet.

When the two knights had heard the news from their light troops, they each drew up their forces with great wiſdom, and ordered their pennons to be diſplayed. The Engliſh foot were intermixed with their men at arms. As ſoon as they were within bow ſhot, the French diſmounted: ſo did likewiſe the Engliſh: then the archers and croſs-bowmen began to ſhoot ſharply, and the men at

arms

armis to advance with their lances before them in close order. The armies met, and blows with spears and battle-axes began to fly about on all sides. The battle was hardly fought, and one might there have seen men at arms make trial of their prowess.

Sir William des Bourdes was completely armed, and, with his battle-axe in his hand, gave such blows to the right and left, that on whomsoever they fell that person was struck to the ground. He performed valorous deeds, worthy of being praised for ever after; and it was not his fault the English were not discomfited.

In another part of the field, sir John Harleston, governor of Cherbourg, fought well and valiantly with his battle-axe, one foot advanced before the other; and well it needed him, for he had to do with an obstinate body of hardy men. Several gallant deeds were performed this day; many a man slain and wounded. Sir John Harleston was struck down and in great peril of his life; but by force of arms he was rescued. The battle lasted long, and was excellently kept up, as well on one side as on the other. The English had not any advantage, for they had as many killed and wounded as the French; but at last the English continued the combat so manfully, and with such courage, that they gained the field: the French were all either slain or made prisoners: few men of honour saved themselves, for they had entered into the engagement with so much good heart that they could not prevail on themselves to fly, but were determined to die or to conquer their enemies.

Sir

Sir William des Bourdes was made priſoner on good terms by a ſquire from Hainault, called William de Beaulieu, an able man at arms, who for a conſiderable time had been attached to the Engliſh in the caſtle of Calais: to him ſir William ſurrendered in great grief, and much enraged that the victory was not his.

The Engliſh that day did much harm to the French. Several were made priſoners towards the end of the engagement; but it was a pity to ſee the numbers killed.

When the Engliſh had ſtripped the dead, ſir John Harleſtone and his men returned to Cherbourg, carrying with them their priſoners and their riches. You may be aſſured that they rejoiced mightily in the ſucceſs of this day, which God had given to them. Sir William des Bourdes was feaſted and entertained with every poſſible attention; for he was perſonally deſerving of whatever could be done for him.

This defeat took place, between Montbourg and Cherbourg, the day of St. Martin *le bouillant* 1379.

When the king of France heard that the garriſon of Montbourg and its governor were either ſlain or made priſoners, and that the country was much alarmed by this defeat, the king, like one well adviſed and attentive to his affairs, immediately provided a remedy, by ſending, without delay, freſh troops to guard the frontiers, the fortreſſes and the country round Cherbourg. Sir Hutin de Bremalles was appointed general of theſe

troops

troops by the king of France, who kept the country againſt the Engliſh.

However, by orders of the king, they afterwards abandoned Montbourg, and all the country of Coutantin, which is one of the richeſt in the world. They made all the inhabitants give up their handſome houſes and other poſſeſſions, and retreat out of this peninſula. The French guarded the frontiers at Dune, Carentan, and at St. Lo, and all the borders of the peninſula of Coutantin.

CHAP. LXIII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU UNDERTAKES AN EXPEDITION AGAINST THE ENGLISH IN THE BOURDELOIS.

YOU have before heard related how the duke of Burgundy had made an incurſion from the borders of Picardy, which was very honourable to him and profitable to the French; and how he had placed in Ardres, and the other caſtles of which he had gained poſſeſſion, governors and men at arms to defend them: eſpecially in the town of Ardres, where he had eſtabliſhed for a time ſir William des Bourdes, and, in his abſence, the viſcount de Meaux and the lord de Saimpy. Theſe captains had it repaired and ſtrengthened, notwithſtanding it was ſtrongly fortified before.

The king of France had heard the news of this with infinite pleaſure, and conſidered this expedition

tion as having done him great ſervice. He ſent immediate orders to the governor of St. Omer, commanding the town of Ardres to be reinforced and provided with every kind of ſtore and proviſion in the moſt ample manner: which orders were punctually obeyed.

The army was diſbanded, except the troops which were attached to the lord de Cliſſon and the Bretons; but they returned as ſpeedily as they could into Brittany, for news had been brought to the lord de Cliſſon and the other barons before Ardres, that Janequin le Clerc*, an Engliſh ſquire and an expert man at arms, had ſailed from England to Brittany, and had reinforced Breſt with Engliſhmen. Theſe Bretons, therefore, carried with them ſir James de Verchin, ſénéſchal of Hainault. The duke of Burgundy returned to his brother the king of France.

At this period, there was a large body of men at arms aſſembled on the borders of the Bourdelois, in obedience to the ſummons of the duke of Anjou and the conſtable of France, who had appointed a day for attacking the Gaſcons and Engliſh, of which I ſhall ſpeak more fully when better informed that I am at preſent.

Whilſt the duke of Burgundy was with his army in Picardy, as I have before ſaid, the duke of

* Janequin le Clerc.—I imagine to be ſir John Clark, of whom Hollingſhed ſpeaks ſo handſomely in the 3d of Richard II. and who was killed in a battle at a ſea port in Brittany.—See Hollingſhed.

Anjou

Anjou reſided in the good town of Toulouſe with the ducheſs his lady, and was deviſing, night and day, different ſchemes to annoy and harraſs the Engliſh; for he found that various caſtles and towns on the river Dordonne, and on the borders of Rouergue, the Toulouſain and Querci, were ſtill harraſſing the country and thoſe inhabitants who had put themſelves under his obedience. He was anxious to provide a remedy for this, and reſolved to lay ſiege to Bergerac: this place being the key to Gaſcony, and ſtanding on the frontiers of Rouergue, Querci and Limouſin. But as he found there were yet ſeveral great barons of Gaſcony adverſe to him, ſuch as the lords de Duras, de Roſem, de Mucident, de Langurant, de Guernoles, de Carles, and ſir Peter de Landuras, with many more, he determined to raiſe a large force that would not only enable him to oppoſe theſe lords but to keep the field.

He wrote, therefore, to ſir John d'Armagnac, who, in ſuch a buſineſs, would not fail him, and ſent alſo to the lord d'Albret. He had before ſent for the conſtable of France, the lord Louis de Sancerre, the lord de Coucy and many knights and ſquires, in Picardy, Brittany and Normandy, who were all willing to ſerve him and to advance their reputation in arms and renown. The conſtable and marſhal of France were already arrived.

The duke of Anjou knew that there exiſted a coolneſs between the relations and friends of the lord de Pommiers, and ſir Thomas Felton, high ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux, and the Bourdelois. I will

will tell you the reaſon of it, and afterwards clear it up.

Long before this period, in the year 1375, there was a cruel inſtance of juſtice executed at Bourdeaux by the orders of ſir Thomas Felton, lieutenant for the king of England in the Bourdelois, upon ſir William lord de Pommiers, on ſuſpicion of treaſon, which aſtoniſhed every one.

By orders of ſir Thomas Felton, this lord de Pommiers was arreſted in Bourdeaux, together with a lawyer, his ſecretary and counſellor, called John Coulon, a native of Bourdeaux. It was proved on them (as I was at the time informed), that the lord de Pommiers had agreed to ſurrender himſelf and all his caſtles to the French; from which charge they could never clear themſelves, ſo that they were condemned to death.

The lord de Pommiers and his ſecretary were publicly beheaded in the market-place of the city of Bourdeaux, before all the people, who much wondered thereat*. His relations blamed this proceeding exceedingly, and that gallant knight, ſir Aymon de Pommiers, uncle to ſir William, ſet out from Bourdeaux and the Bourdelois very

* A. D. 1377, 1378.

Rotuli Vaſconiæ de anno primo Ricardi II.—Membranæ 16, 17, 18, 19.

1. Proceſſus judicii rediti contra Willelmum Sans, dominum de Pommiers, pro proditione, in curia Vaſconiæ, et de Caſtris et terris ſuis ſatisfactis ad dominum regem.

indignant at ſuch a diſgrace to his family, and ſwore he would never again bear arms for the king of England. He croſſed the ſeas to the holy ſepulchre, and made ſeveral other voyages. On his return, he changed to the French intereſt, placing himſelf and his territories under the obedience of the king of France. He immediately ſent his challenge to the lord de l'Eſparre, and made war upon him, becauſe he had been one of the judges of his nephew.

Sir John Bleſſac, ſir Peter de Landuras and ſir Bertrand du Franc were alſo implicated in theſe ſuſpicions of treaſon, as well as on account of the ſurrender of the caſtle of Fronſac, which had been delivered up to the French, it being the inheritance of the lord de Pommiers who had been beheaded: they were detained in priſon at Bourdeaux upwards of ſeven months. They were at length ſet at liberty, through the entreaties of their friends, for nothing could be proved againſt them. Sir Gaillard Vighier, however, continued a long time in imminent danger, which ſurpriſed many, as he was not of that country, but had come from Lombardy with the lord de Coucy, and was in the ſervice of pope Gregory, who exerted himſelf in his deliverance as ſoon as he heard of his impriſonment, the knight having inſiſted on his innocence.

By theſe means, much ſecret hatred was cauſed, from which many miſchiefs enſued.

When the duke of Anjou ſaw the time was arrived for his marching from Toulouſe, and that

the

the greater part of his men at arms were in the field; in particular, the conſtable of France, in whom he had the greateſt confidence; he ſet out from Toulouſe, and took the direct road to Bergerac. Sir Perducas d'Albret was governor of the place: he reſided in a ſmall caſtle, a ſhort league from Languedoc, called Moueux, which is a ſtrong fort.

The duke of Anjou and his army marched until they came before Bergerac, when they encamped themſelves all around it, and as near the river as poſſible for the greater eaſe of themſelves and their horſes. Many great barons were with the duke: in the firſt place, ſir John d'Armagnac, with a large troop; the conſtable of France with another large body; the lord Louis de Sancerre, ſir John de Bueil, ſir Peter de Bueil, ſir Evan of Wales, ſir Maurice de Triſiquidi (who had formerly been one of the thirty knights on the French ſide at the duel in Brittany), ſir Alain de Beaumont, ſir Alain de la Houſſaye, ſir William and ſir Peter de Mornay, ſir John de Vers, ſir Baldwin Cremoux, Thibaut du Pont, Heliot de Calais, and many other able men at arms with large companies. They encamped themſelves to a great extent in thoſe fine meadows along the river Dordonne, ſo that it was a great pleaſure to look at them.

The conſtable was lodged very near to the quarters of the duke. Thoſe companions who were deſirous of advancing themſelves frequently came to the barriers to ſkirmiſh: many of whom were

ſlain or wounded by arrows as in ſuch adventures muſt happen.

At the end of ſix days after the town of Bergerac had been beſieged, the lord d'Albret and ſir Bernard d'Albret, his couſin, arrived in the camp of the duke, well accompanied by men at arms and foot-ſoldiers, where they were received with joy, as the army was by them greatly reinforced.

The duke, with the principal leaders of the army, held a council on the eighth day, to conſider in what manner they could moſt effectually annoy the inhabitants of Bergerac. Many ſpeeches were made, and different propoſals offered. It was long debated to ſtorm the town, but afterwards this meaſure was abandoned, as their men might ſuffer much, and not make any great gain. The council broke up without coming to any determination, except to continue on the ſiege; for they were ſtill expecting large bodies of men at arms from France, and in particular the lord de Coucy.

CHAP. LXIV.

SIR THOMAS FELTON IS DEFEATED AND MADE PRISONER, WITH MANY OF THE PRINCIPAL LORDS OF GASCONY, BY A PARTY OF FRENCH AT THE SIEGE OF BERGERAC.

SIR Thomas Felton, who reſided at Bourdeaux, was not at his eaſe from knowing that his enemies were but twelve leagues diſtant, and in ſuch numbers that he could not think of oppoſing them by force, having alſo learnt the duke of Anjou's ſummons and intentions: he had, therefore, ſent information to the king and council in England; but thoſe whom he had diſpatched thither had not been able to do any thing, for the kingdom of England was much ſhaken, and different parties were mutually oppoſing each other.

The duke of Lancaſter, in particular, was unpopular with the common people; from which cauſe much party animoſity and danger happened afterwards in England. No men at arms were ſent either to Gaſcony or to Brittany; on which account, thoſe who were defending the frontiers for the young king were very ill pleaſed.

It happened that ſir Thomas Felton had deſired the lord de l'Eſparre to go to England, for the better information of the king and his uncles reſpecting the affairs of Gaſcony, in order that they

might take council to provide for them. The lord de l'Eſparre had already left Bourdeaux, and was proceeding on his voyage; but the wind proving unfavourable, he was driven into the Spaniſh ſeas, where he was met by ſome ſhips from Spain, with whom he engaged unſucceſsfully: he was made priſoner and carried to Spain, where he remained upwards of a year and a half, and ſuffered many mortifications from the relations of the lord de Pommiers.

Sir Thomas was a truly valiant man: he had written and ſent ſpecial meſſengers to the lords de Mucident, de Duras, de Roſem and de Languirant, four of the moſt noble and powerful barons of Gaſcony, and who were attached to England, to requeſt, that for the honour of the king their lord, they would not fail, on any account, to defend the principality, and to deſire they would come to Bourdeaux with their vaſſals; for all knights who were anxious to acquit themſelves towards the king and lord were already arrived there.

When they were all aſſembled, they amounted to full five hundred lances: they remained at Bourdeaux, and in the Bourdelois, during the time when the duke of Anjou was beginning the ſiege of Bergerac. Sir Thomas Felton and theſe four Gaſcon barons held a council, in which they reſolved to march towards the French, and poſt themſelves in a ſecure ſituation, to ſee if they could gain any advantage over them. They ſet out, therefore, from Bourdeaux with upwards of three

three hundred lances, taking the road for la Réole, and came to a certain town called Yuret*, in which they quartered themſelves.

The French knew nothing of this ambuſcade, and ſuffered much from it. The ſiege of Bergerac was ſtill going forward: there were many ſkirmiſhes and deeds of arms performed with the garriſon by the beſiegers; but the French were not great gainers, for ſir Perducas d'Albret, the governor, was very active in oppoſing them, that no blame might be imputed to him.

The army called another council, and reſolved to ſend for a large machine, called a ſow, from la Réole, in order the more to haraſs the garriſon. This ſow was a large engine, which caſt weighty ſtones, and one hundred men, completely armed, could be drawn up in it, and attack the walls. Sir Peter de Beuil, ſir John de Vers, ſir Baldwin de Cremoux, ſir Alain de Beaumont, the lord de Montcalay and the lord de Gaures, were ordered to go for this engine: they left the army, in conſequence, with about three hundred men at arms whom they could depend on, and, fording the river Dordonne, rode towards la Réole: they advanced between Bergerac and la Réole, until they came to Yurac, where the Engliſh were in ambuſcade with upwards of four hundred combatants, of which they were ignorant.

* Yuret,—probably Yurac,—a village in Guienne, near Bourdeaux.

News was brought to the army and to the conſtable of France, that the Engliſh had taken the field; but it was unknown which way they had marched. The conſtable, leſt his men might be ſurpriſed, immediately ordered a large detachment to guard the foragers, who were out between the rivers Garonne and Dordonne, and gave the command of it to ſir Peter de Mornay, ſir Evan of Wales, Thibaut du Pont and Heliot de Calais: there might be in this detachment two hundred lances of tried men.

Sir Peter de Beuil, and the others who were ſent to bring the ſow, rode on to la Réole, and, having laden a great many carts with it, ſet out on their return, but by a different route from that by which they had arrived, for they required a broader road for their convoy, and yet they were to paſs by Yurac, or very near to it, where the Engliſh were in ambuſcade: however, they were ſo fortunate to meet with a ſecond detachment from their army, when they were within a ſhort league of the town. The whole then amounted to full ſix hundred lances. They continued their march in greater ſecurity, and more at their leiſure.

Sir Thomas Felton and the barons of Gaſcony in Yurac were informed, that the French were eſcorting that way a very large engine, from la Réole to their ſiege of Bergerac. They were much rejoiced at this intelligence, and ſaid it was what they wiſhed. They then armed themſelves, mounted their horſes, and drew up in the beſt array they were able. When they had advanced into

into the plain, they had not long to wait before they ſaw the French, marching in a large body, and in handſome order. No ſooner was each party aſſured that thoſe whom they ſaw were enemies, who ſeemed mutually eager for the conteſt, than ſticking ſpurs into their horſes, and with ſpears in their reſts, they charged each other, ſhouting their different war cries. I muſt ſay, that in this firſt conflict, many a gallant tilt was performed, and many a knight and ſquire were unhorſed and driven to the ground.

In ſuch deadly warfare, there is no accident but what may happen. Heliot de Calais, a moſt able ſquire and good man at arms was knocked off his horſe, by a violent ſtroke on the throat-piece with a ſpear, whoſe broad point was as ſharp and as fine as a razor. This iron cut through the throat-piece, as well as all the veins: the ſtroke beat him to the ground, when he ſhortly after died: the more the pity. By this accident did he end his days.

Among the French, there was a knight from Berry or Limouſin, named ſir William de Lignac, an excellent man at arms, who this day performed many gallant deeds.

The combat was ſharp, and long continued on each ſide, cloſe to the village of Yurac: when their lances failed, they drew their ſwords, and the attack was more vigorouſly renewed. Many feats of proweſs were performed, many captures made, and many reſcued. Of the Engliſh ſlain on the ſpot, was a Gaſcon knight, called the lord de

Gernos

Gernos and de Calais: of the French, Thibaut du Pont.

This battle was well and long fought: many handſome deeds were done, for they were all men of valour: but in the end the Engliſh could not gain the field: they were fairly conquered by the French. Sir William de Lignac captured with his own hand ſir Thomas Felton, ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux: nearly at the ſame time, the lords de Mucident, de Duras, de Roſem, de Langurant, were alſo made priſoners. Few of the Engliſh or Gaſcons but were made priſoners or ſlain.

Thoſe who could eſcape met, on their return towards Bourdeaux, the ſénéſchal des Landes, ſir William Helman, the mayor of Bourdeaux, and ſir John de Multon; in the whole, about one hundred lances: who were haſtening to Yurac, but, when they heard the news of ſo complete a defeat, they wheeled about, and returned as ſpeedily as poſſible to Bourdeaux.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXV.

BERGERAC SURRENDERS TO THE DUKE OF ANJOU.—THE LORDS DE DURAS AND DE ROSEM, AFTER HAVING PROMISED TO BE OF THE FRENCH INTEREST, RETURN AGAIN TO THE ENGLISH.

WHEN this engagement was over and the field cleared, and all thoſe who had been made priſoners placed under a ſecure guard, they ſet out on their return to the ſiege carrying on at Bergerac.

The duke of Anjou was mightily rejoiced when he heard of the detachments having had ſuch ſucceſs, and that all the flower of Gaſcony, the knights and ſquires his enemies, were either killed or taken, and among them ſir Thomas Felton, who had been very active againſt him; ſo that he would rather have loſt five hundred thouſand francs than that it ſhould have been otherwiſe.

Sir Peter de Beuil, ſir William de Lignac, ſir Evan of Wales and others, continued their march until they came to their army before Bergerac, where they were received with much pleaſure by the duke of Anjou, the conſtable, the barons and knights their friends, who conſidered their ſucceſs as very honourable and profitable to them.

On the morrow, the ſow they had brought was erected near to the walls of Bergerac, which much alarmed

alarmed the inhabitants, who held a council to conſider their ſituation, and whether they could maintain it. They addreſſed themſelves to their governor, for they found they could not long hold out, as no ſuccour was to be expected ſince their ſénéſchal was taken, and with him the chivalry of Gaſcony, on whoſe aſſiſtance they had depended.

Sir Perducas told them, they were in ſufficient ſtrength to hold out for ſome time, being well provided with proviſions and artillery, if they made not any fooliſh agreement.

Things remained in this ſituation until the next morning, when the trumpets of the army ſounded for an aſſault, and every one repaired to his banner. The conſtable of France, who was in the field with a grand array, ſent to hold a parley with the inhabitants before the aſſault began, or any of their men were wounded or ſlain; in which he remonſtrated with them, that having had their leaders made priſoners, from whom alone they could hope for aſſiſtance, and who were now in treaty to place themſelves and their lands under the obedience of the king of France, they could not look for any relief; and, ſhould the town be taken by ſtorm, it would inevitably be deſtroyed by fire and flame, and none receive quarter.

Theſe threats frightened the inhabitants, who demanded time to hold a conſultation, which was granted to them. The burghers then aſſembled, without calling in their governor, and agreed to ſurrender as good Frenchmen, provided they were peaceably and gently dealt with, without any

of

of the army entering their town, which was directly granted.

When ſir Perducas d'Albret, their governor, heard of this, he mounted his horſe, ordered his men to march, and, having paſſed the bridges, made for the fort of Moncin, when Begerac ſurrendered to the French.

The conſtable of France took poſſeſſion of it, placing therein a governor and men at arms to keep and defend it.

After the ſurrender of Begerac, the duke of Anjou was adviſed to advance further into the country, and lay ſiege to Caſtillon* on the Dordonne. News of this was ſoon ſpread through the army, when every one began to make his preparations accordingly; that is to ſay, the duke, the conſtable and the other men at arms, except the marſhal of France, who remained behind to wait for the lord de Coucy, as he was expected to arrive that evening (which indeed he did), when the marſhal advanced to meet him with a very large attendance of his men, and received him moſt amicably. They remained all that night in the place which the duke had left.

The duke and his army advanced to a fine mead, on the banks of the Dordonne, in his march to Caſtillon.

Under the command of the lord de Coucy were, ſir Aymon de Pommiers, ſir Triſtan de Roye, the

* Caſtillon,—a town of Guyenne, election of Bourdeaux.

lords

lords de Faignelles, de Jumont, ſir John de Roſay, ſir Robert de Clermont, and ſeveral other knights and ſquires. They marched from their quarters, and continued advancing in company with the marſhal of France and his troops until they arrived at the army of the duke, where they were received with much ſatisfaction.

In the road to Caſtillon, there is a town called St. Foy: before the van-guard arrived at Caſtillon, they marched thither, and having ſurrounded it, began to attack it briſkly. This town had not any men at arms, and but trifling fortifications, ſo that it did not long defend itſelf. On its ſurrender, it was pillaged.

The ſiege was formed before Caſtillon above the river, and continued for fifteen days: of courſe, there were many ſkirmiſhes at the barriers, for ſome Engliſh and Gaſcons had retreated thither after the battle of Yurac, and defended themſelves valiantly.

The Gaſcon barons who had been made priſoners at Yurac, were ſtill in the French camp, and in treaty to turn to the French party. Sir Thomas Felton was not ſolicited ſo to do, as he was an Engliſhman, but had his ranſom fixed by his maſter, ſir William de Lignac, to whom he paid thirty thouſand francs, and obtained his liberty: but this was not immediately ſettled.

After much negociating, the four Gaſcon barons turned to the French: they engaged, on their faith and honour, that themſelves and their vaſſals would ever after remain good Frenchmen; for which

which reaſon the duke of Anjou gave them their liberties.

The lords de Duras and de Roſem left the duke with a good underſtanding, intending to viſit their own eſtates: the lords de Mucident and de Langurant remained with the army, and were graciouſly treated by the duke of Anjou, with whom they frequently dined and ſupped.

The firſt mentioned lords thought the duke very obliging in thus lightly allowing them to depart, which indeed he afterwards repented, as he had good reaſon. Theſe two lords, when on their road converſing together, ſaid; 'How can we ſerve the duke of Anjou and the French, when we have hitherto been loyal Engliſh? It will be much better for us to deceive the duke of Anjou than the king of England, our natural lord, and who has always been ſo kind to us.' This they adopted, and reſolved to go to Bourdeaux, to the ſénéſchal des Landes, ſir William Helman, and aſſure him that their hearts would never ſuffer them to become good Frenchmen.

The two barons continued their journey to Bourdeaux, where they were joyfully received: for they had not then heard any thing of their treaties with the duke of Anjou.

The ſénéſchal des Landes and the mayor of Bourdeaux were inquiſitive after news, and what ſums they had paid for their ranſoms. They ſaid, that through conſtraint and threats of death, the duke of Anjou had forced them to turn to the French: but added, 'Gentlemen, we will truly tell

tell you, that before we took the oath, we reſerved in our hearts our faith to our natural lord the king of England; and, for any thing we have ſaid or done, will we never become Frenchmen.'

The knights from England were much pleaſed with theſe words, and declared they had acquitted themſelves loyally towards their lord.

Five days afterwards, news was brought to the duke of Anjou and the army before Caſtillon, that the lords de Duras and de Roſem had turned to the Engliſh, which very much aſtoniſhed the duke, the conſtable and the other barons. The duke then ſent to the lords de Mucident and de Languirant, told them what he had heard, and aſked what they thought of it: theſe barons, who were exceedingly vexed, replied; 'My lord, if they have broken their faith, we will not belie ours; and that which we have ſaid and ſworn to you we will loyally keep, nor ſhall the contrary be ever reproached to us; for by valour and gallant deeds of arms have your party conquered us, and we will therefore remain ſteady in our obedience to you.'

'I believe you firmly,' ſaid the duke of Anjou; 'and I ſwear by God firſt, and then by my lord and brother, that on leaving this place, we will not undertake any one thing before we have beſieged the towns of Duras and Roſem.'

Things remained in this ſtate; that is to ſay, the duke of Anjou much enraged at the conduct of the two Gaſcon barons, and the ſiege continuing before

before Caſtillon. The town and caſtle of Caſtillon, on the Dordonne, was a town and inheritance of the captal de Buch, whom the king of France had detained in priſon at Paris.

CHAP. LXVI.

CASTILLON, SAUVETERRE AND SEVERAL OTHER PLACES IN GASCONY SURRENDER TO THE DUKE OF ANJOU.

DURING the time Caſtillon was beſieged, there was a great famine, in ſo much that for money there was difficulty in getting proviſions. The French were forced to march twelve or fifteen leagues for forage for the army, and in going and returning they ran great riſks; for there were many caſtles and Engliſh garriſons on the frontiers, from whence they ſallied forth and formed ambuſcades; or they waited in the narrow paſſes and defiles; and whenever they found themſelves the ſtrongeſt, they fell upon the French foragers, killed and wounded them, and carried off their forage. For this reaſon, they never could forage but in large bodies.

The ſiege of Caſtillon was carried on with much vigour, and the garriſon ſo haraſſed by aſſaults and engines that they ſurrendered, on their lives and fortunes being ſpared. The men at arms

marched out, and as many more as chose to leave it, and went to St. Macaire*, where there is a good castle and strong town.

On the surrender of Castillon, the duke of Anjou received the fealty and homage of the inhabitants, and renewed the officers: he appointed as governor of it a knight from Touraine, called sir James de Montmartin.

When they were about to march from Castillon, they called a council to consider whither they should go next; and it was determined to advance towards St. Marine; but, as several small forts were scattered about the country before they could arrive there, it was not thought proper to leave them in their rear (on account of the foragers. They therefore, on quitting Castillon, marched to Sauveterre†, which they besieged.

Other intelligence was brought, respecting the lords de Duras and de Rosem, different from what had been at first reported; that in truth they were at Bourdeaux, but it was not known on what terms.

This news was spread through the army, and was so public as to come to the ears of the lords de Mitident and de Languiant: they mentioned it to the lord de Coucy and sir Peter de Bueil, whom they were desirous to interest in excusing those knights, adding that it was very simple to

* St. Macaire,—a city in Guyenne, on the Garonne, nine leagues from Bourdeaux.

† Sauveterre,—a town in Gascony, diocese of Comminges.

believe

believe ſuch tales ſo lightly told. They replied, they would willingly undertake to ſpeak to the duke, who told them he ſhould be very happy to find the contrary true to what he had heard. The affair remained in this ſtate, and the ſiege of Sauveterre continued.

The town of Sauveterre held out only for three days; for the knight who was governor ſurrendered it to the duke, on condition of himſelf, his troops, with their fortunes, being ſpared. By theſe means they marched and came before St. Bazile, a good town, which immediately ſurrendered, and put itſelf under the obedience of the king of France.

They then advanced to Montſegur*, which they attacked on their arrival, but did not gain it on this firſt attempt. They encamped and refreſhed themſelves for the night. On the morrow, they prepared for the aſſault, and thoſe within, ſeeing they were in earneſt, began to be greatly alarmed, and called a council, wherein it was at laſt determined that they would offer to ſurrender on having their lives and fortunes ſpared; and upon theſe terms they were received.

The French marched away to another good walled town, ſituated between St. Macaire and la Réole, called Auberoche. They were four days before they could gain it, which was done by capitulation. The French then advanced to St. Macaire.

* A village in Gaſcony, election of Landes.

CHAP. LXVII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU TAKES THE TOWN AND CASTLE OF ST. MACAIRE BY CAPITULATION,—THE TOWN OF DURAS BY STORM, BUT THE CASTLE RECEIVES QUARTER.

THE army of the duke of Anjou was daily increaſing from all quarters; for ſuch knights and ſquires as were deſirous of renown came to wait on him, and to ſerve him. The ſiege was formed before St. Macaire in a very handſome manner; for thoſe men at arms had retreated thither who had quitted the garriſons which had ſurrendered. The town, therefore, had been greatly reinforced, and better guarded. There were many grand aſſaults and ſkirmiſhes, as well before the town as at the barriers.

Whilſt the ſiege was going forward, the duke of Anjou and the conſtable of France ordered the leaders of the different corps to make excurſions in various parts. Large detachments, therefore, ſet out, under the orders of the marſhal of France, ſir Perceval de Marneil and ſir William de Moncontour.

Theſe detachments remained for ſix days in the field, took ſeveral towns and ſmall caſtles, and put all the ſurrounding country under the ſubjection of the king of France. None went out to oppoſe them, for the whole country was almoſt empty

empty of men at arms attached to the Engliſh, and the few who were there fled towards Bourdeaux. When they had finiſhed their expeditions, they returned to the army.

The inhabitants of St. Macaire knew well that they could not hold out for a long time: and the beſiegers promiſed them every day, that if they ſuffered themſelves to be taken by ſtorm, they ſhould all without mercy be put to death. They began to be doubtful leſt their career might terminate in this cruel manner, and ſecretly opened a treaty with the French to ſurrender, on their lives and fortunes being ſpared.

The men at arms in St. Macaire had intelligence of this, and ſuſpecting the inhabitants might perhaps form ſome treaty inimical to them, they retired into the caſtle, which was large and ſtrong, and built to ſtand a good ſiege, taking with them all their own wealth, and a good deal of pillage from the town. Upon this, the inhabitants ſurrendered their town to the king of France.

The duke of Anjou received intelligence during the ſiege of St. Macaire, that his lady the ducheſs had been brought to bed of a ſon at Toulouſe. The duke and the whole army were much rejoiced at this event, and their warlike heroiſm was greatly increaſed.

The men at arms entered the town, for it had large and handſome houſes, in which they refreſhed themſelves, as they had wherewithal, the town being well provided with every ſort of proviſion.

The caſtle was ſurrounded on all ſides, and engines erected before it, which caſt ſuch large ſtones as greatly aſtoniſhed the garriſon. Whilſt this ſiege was carrying on, true intelligence was brought reſpecting the lords de Duras and de Roſem, by two heralds who declared they had turned to the Engliſh. On hearing this the duke ſaid, 'Let me but gain St. Macaire, and I will immediately march and lay ſiege to Duras.' He ordered the attacks on the caſtle to be renewed with greater vigour, for he was not willing to leave it in his rear.

The garriſon ſeeing themſelves thus attacked, witthout any hopes of ſuccour, and knowing that the duke and conſtable were determined to have them by fair or foul means, thought they ſhould act wiſely if they entered into a treaty, which they accompliſhed, and delivered up the caſtle, on their lives and fortunes being ſpared, and on being conducted to Bourdeaux. Thus did the town and caſtle of St. Macaire become French.

The duke of Anjou took poſſeſſion of it, appointed a governor, and then decamped with his whole army, taking the road towards Duras.

The army continued its march until it came before Duras, when an attack was immediately ordered. The men at arms made themſelves ready, and the croſs-bowmen, well ſhielded, advanced to the town; ſome of whom had provided themſelves with ladders, in order the more eaſily to ſcale the walls.

This

This attack was very ſevere, and thoſe who had mounted the walls fought hand to hand with their opponents: ſo many gallant deeds were done by each party, that it laſted the greater part of the day.

When they had thus well fought for a length of time, the marſhals ordered the trumpets to ſound a retreat, and every man retired to his quarters for the night. In the mean time, ſir Alain de la Haye, and ſir Alain de St. Pol, arrived at the army with a large troop of Bretons, who had marched towards Libourne*, and had attacked an Engliſh garriſon at Cadillac†, which they had taken by ſtorm, and ſlain all within it.

On the morrow morning, the duke ordered the ſtorming to be renewed, and that each man ſhould exert himſelf to the utmoſt. He had it alſo proclaimed by a herald, that whoever ſhould firſt enter Duras ſhould receive five hundred francs.

The deſire of gaining this reward made many poor companions come forward. Ladders were placed againſt the walls in various places, and the attack began in earneſt; for the young knights and ſquires, who were eager for renown, did not ſpare themſelves, but fought with a thorough good will.

---

* Libourne,—a city of Guyenne on the Dordonne, ten leagues from Bourdeaux.

† Cadillac—a town in Guyenne, ſeven leagues from Bourdeaux.

The lord de Langurant had aſcended a ladder, with his ſword in his hand, and fought hard to enter the town the firſt, not indeed for the five hundred francs, but to illuſtrate his name; for he was exceedingly angry that the lord de Duras had ſo lightly turned to the Engliſh. The lord de Langurant, as I muſt ſay, performed ſuch deeds that his own people as well as ſtrangers were quite aſtoniſhed therewith, and advanced ſo far that his life was in great jeopardy; for thoſe within ſide the walls tore off the helmet from his head, and with it the hood, ſo that he would inevitably have been ſlain, if his own ſquire, who followed him cloſe, had not covered him with his target. The knight deſcended the ladder by degrees, but he received in his deſcent ſeveral heavy blows on the target. He was much eſteemed for this aſſault, by all thoſe who ſaw him.

In another part, ſir Triſtan de Roye and ſir Perceval d'Ayvenal, mounted on ladders, fought moſt valorouſly; and alſo ſir John de Jumont and ſir John de Roſay, where each for his part did wonders in arms. On the battlements was the lord de Seriel, mounted on a ladder, fighting gallantly hand to hand with thoſe on the inſide; and all who ſaw him ſaid, that if any one was likely to have the advantage of firſt entering the town, he was in the road ſo to do.

This knight did not thus adventure himſelf for profit, but for glory: however, as fortune is hazardous, he was ſtruck down with ſuch force by a ſword,

ſword, that he tumbled into the ditch, and broke his neck. In ſuchwiſe died this knight.

The ſame fate attended a ſquire from Brittany, who bore for his arms two chevrons gules, chequered with or, argent, and azur. This vexed the conſtable ſo much that he ordered the aſſailants to be reinforced, and the fight continued with more vigour than before. The lord de Mucident proved himſelf an able knight, and ſhewed he was indeed a Frenchman from the manner in which he aſſaulted.

The town of Duras was taken by ſtorm, and the firſt perſons who entered it were ſir Triſtan de Roye and ſir John de Roſay. When the men at arms in Duras ſaw that the town muſt be loſt, they retreated into the caſtle, leaving the reſt to its fate. Thus was Duras taken, and all found in it were put to death. The men at arms retired to their quarters, where they diſarmed themſelves, and took their eaſe, having plenty of proviſion with them.

On the morrow morning, the conſtable of France, attended by the marſhal, mounted their horſes, and rode to the caſtle to reconnoitre, and ſee on which ſide they could beſt attack it. Having well examined it, they found it was marvelloufly ſtrong, and ſaid, that without a very long ſiege, it would not be eaſily taken: on their return, they related this to the duke of Anjou. 'That does not ſignify,' replied the duke, 'for I have ſaid and ſworn, that I would not ſtir from hence until I ſhould have this caſtle under my obedience.'

obedience.' 'And you ſhall not forſwear yourſelf,' anſwered the conſtable.

Engines were directly pointed againſt the caſtle, as they were ready on the ſpot. When thoſe within ſaw the great preparations that were making againſt them, as well by thoſe in the town as by the French, and that the attack would be ſevere, and probably fatal to them, they thought it adviſable to enter into a negotiation. They opened a treaty with the conſtable, who agreed to ſpare their lives and fortunes on their ſurrendering the caſtle. The duke of Anjou was therefore adviſed by the conſtable not to fatigue or hurt his men, but to grant them quarter, which he did. On the third day they marched out of the caſtle, and were conducted whither they wiſhed to go, and the conſtable took poſſeſſion of it; but I believe the duke of Anjou ordered it to be razed to the ground.

CHAP. LXVIII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU RETURNS TO THE DUCHESS AT TOULOUSE, AND THE CONSTABLE TO THE KING OF FRANCE.—EVAN OF WALES LAYS SIEGE TO MORTAIN SUR MER.

AFTER the conqueſt of the town and caſtle of Duras, the duke of Anjou ordered ſir John de Jumont, ſir Triſtan de Roye, and ſir John

John de Roſay, to remain in the town of Landurant* (for the lord of it had turned to the French ſince he had been made priſoner at the battle of Yurac), with one hundred good ſpears to guard the frontiers againſt the Bourdelois: he himſelf wiſhed to return to Toulouſe to ſee his ducheſs, who had been delivered of a handſome boy, for he was deſirous of holding a grand feaſt at Toulouſe to celebrate this event.

He therefore ordered men at arms to the different towns and caſtles which he had conquered. On diſmiſſing Evan of Wales, he ſaid to him; 'You will take under your command the Bretons, Poitevins, and Angevins, with whom you will march into Poitou, and lay ſiege to Mortain ſur mer, which the lord de l'Eſtrade† holds; and do not quit the place for any orders which you may receive in the king's name until you have had poſſeſſion of it; for it is a garriſon that has done us much miſchief.'

'My lord,' replied Evan 'as far as ſhall be in my power I will loyally obey you.' The duke, the conſtable, and the lord de Coucy, then ordered all thoſe who were to accompany Evan into Poitou. Upon this, full five hundred good men at arms left the duke, and took the road to Saintonge, in order to advance towards St. Jean d'Angeli.

---

* Landurant,—ſhould be Landiras,—a town in Guyenne, near Bourdeaux. William Shalton was lord of Landirans.—See Rolles Gaſconnes.

† The ſouldich de l'Eſtrade.—See Anſtis.

The

The duke of Anjou, the conſtable of France, the lord de Coucy, the marſhal of France, ſir John and ſir Peter de Bueil, returned to Toulouſe, where they found the ducheſs newly recovered from her lying-in. On this event there were very great rejoicings and feaſtings at Toulouſe.

The conſtable and the lord de Coucy then returned to Paris; the marſhal de Sancerre into Auvergne, to aſſiſt the dauphin of Auvergne and the barons of that country, who were carrying on the war againſt the Engliſh that had remained in Limouſin, Rouergue, and on the borders of Auvergne.

Let us now ſay ſomething of Evan of Wales, how he laid ſiege at this ſeaſon to Mortain, and how he haraſſed its garriſon. Evan of Wales, being deſirous of obeying the orders of the duke of Anjou, (for he knew well that whatever the duke did was by the directions of the king of France his brother, as he had paid all the expenſes of the different expeditions he had made) had advanced as far as Saintes. He had halted to refreſh himſelf and his companions in that rich country between Saintes and Poitou, and in the beautiful meads which are on the banks of the rivers in thoſe parts. Many knights and ſquires of Poitou were with him, ſuch as the lords de Pons, de Touars, de Vivarois, the lord James de Surgeres, and ſeveral more. On the other hand, from Brittany and Normandy, were ſir Maurice de Triſiquedi, ſir Alain de la Houſſaye, ſir Alain de St. Pol, ſir Perceval d'Ayneval, ſir William de Montcontour,

Montcoutour, the lord de Mommor, and Morelet his brother.

Theſe troops, when ordered, marched away, and laid ſiege to Mortain. The caſtle is ſituated on the Garonne, near to and below its embouchure with the ſea: it is the handſomeſt and ſtrongeſt fort in all the borders of the countries of Poitou, la Rochelle, and Saintonge.

When Evan of Wales, the barons and knights were arrived there, they formed the ſiege very prudently, and provided themſelves by little and little with every thing they wanted; for they were well aware that they could never conquer the caſtle by ſtorm, but that it muſt be won by diſtreſſing the garriſon with famine and a long blockade.

Evan, therefore, ordered four block-houſes to be erected, ſo that no proviſion could enter the place by ſea or by land.

At times the young knights and ſquires who wiſhed to diſplay their courage, advanced to the barriers of the caſtle, and ſkirmiſhed with the garriſon. Many gallant deeds were there performed.

There was a knight in Mortain called the ſouldich, who was from Gaſcony, a valiant knight and able man at arms, whoſe orders they obeyed as if he had been their governor. The caſtle was plentifully ſupplied with wines and proviſion, but they were in great want of ſeveral ſmaller neceſſaries.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIX.

KING CHARLES OF FRANCE INSTIGATES THE SCOTS TO MAKE WAR ON ENGLAND.—THE SCOTS TAKE THE CASTLE OF BERWICK.

KING Charles of France, notwithſtanding he always reſided at Paris, or at various other places in France which pleaſed him more, and that he never bore arms himſelf, kept up a very ſharp war againſt his enemies the Engliſh. He had formed alliances, as well in the empire as with the adjoining kingdoms, in a greater degree than the four or five preceding kings of France had ever done. He paid great attentions to all from whom he thought he ſhould derive any aſſiſtance; and becauſe king Richard of England was young, and his kingdom unſettled, he had ſent to renew his alliance with the Scots, and with their king, Robert Stuart, who had ſucceeded his uncle king David Bruce, and to excite them to make war upon the Engliſh, ſo that they ſhould be diſabled from croſſing the ſeas.

Upon this, king Robert, after the death of Edward and the coronation of Richard, aſſembled his council at Edinburgh, where he had ſummoned the greater part of thoſe barons and knights from whom he looked for aſſiſtance. He remonſtrated with them againſt the Engliſh for having in former times done them much miſchief by burning

ing their country, razing their caſtles, killing and ranſoming the inhabitants: that the time was now arrived when they might revenge themſelves for all theſe diſgraces; as king Edward was deceaſed, who had been ſo ſucceſsful againſt them, and a young king was now on the throne.

The barons of Scotland and the young knights preſent, being deſirous of advancing themſelves and revenging the injuries which the Engliſh had formerly done to their country, replied unanimouſly, that they were willing and prepared to invade England, either to-day or to-morrow, or whenever he pleaſed.

This anſwer was very agreeable to the king of Scotland, who returned them his thanks for it.

Four earls were appointed captains of men at arms; namely, the earl of Douglas, the earl of Moray, the earl of Mar and the earl of Sutherland; ſir Archibald Douglas conſtable of Scotland, and ſir Robert de Verſi* marſhal of the whole army.

Summons were immediately iſſued for the aſſembling of the forces by a certain day in the Merſe, which is the country bordering on England. Whilſt this ſummons was obeying, a valiant ſquire of Scotland, named Alexander Ramſay, ſet off with forty men from his company, determined to perform a gallant enterprize. They were all well mounted, and, having rode the whole night through bye roads, came to Berwick nearly at day-break.

* Sir Robert de Verſi. Q.

A ſquire

A ſquire attached to the earl of Northumberland, called William Biſſet, was governor of the town of Berwick; and a very able knight, called ſir Robert Abeton*, was conſtable of the caſtle.

When the Scots were arrived near Berwick, they concealed themſelves, and ſent a ſpy to obſerve the ſtate of the caſtle. The ſpy entered it as far as the ditches, wherein there was not any water, nor indeed could any be retained in them, for they were of moving ſands: he looked about him on all ſides, but did not ſee a ſoul: upon which, he returned back to his maſters.

Alexander Ramſay directly advanced with his companions, without ſpeaking a word, and paſſed the ditches: they had brought good ladders with them, which they placed againſt the walls. Alexander was the firſt who mounted them ſword in

---

* Sir Robert Abeton—ſir Robert Boynton. Dr. Fuller, in his hiſtory of Berwick, 1799, ſays, 'that ſeven intrepid Scotſmen in 1377 took poſſeſſion of Berwick caſtle by ſtorm in the night, and continued maſters of it for eight days, though it was beſieged by ſeven thouſand Engliſh archers and three thouſand cavalry, and only loſt two of their number, which had increaſed to forty-eight when they were ſubdued. Notwithſtanding this heroic achievement, they were all put to the ſword.

'Upon entering the caſtle, they killed the governor, ſir Robert Boynton, but liberated his lady for two thouſand marks.

'When the earl of Northumberland ſummoned theſe heroes to ſurrender, they boldly replied;

'That they would not yield it either to the kings of England or Scotland, but would retain and defend it for the king of France.'

No authority is mentioned.

hand,

hand, and entered the caſtle followed by his men without any oppoſition.

When they had all entered, they haſtened to the great tower where ſir Robert Boynton ſlept, and began to cut down the door of it with the axes they had brought. The governor was ſuddenly awakened: he had ſlept all the night, and kept but a poor watch, for which he paid dear. He heard the door of his chamber broken, and thought it might to done by ſome of his own men who wanted to murder him, becauſe he had quarrelled with them the preceding week. With this idea, he opened a window which looked on the ditches, leaped out of it without further conſideration, and thus broke his neck and died on the ſpot.

The guards of the caſtle, who towards day-break had been aſleep, awakened by his groans, found the caſtle had been ſcaled and taken: they began to ſound their trumpets, and to cry out, 'Treaſon! treaſon!'

John Biſſet, the governor of Berwick, on hearing their cries, armed himſelf, as well as all the able men of the town, and advanced toward the caſtle, when they plainly heard the noiſe of the Scots; but they could not gain entrance, for the gates were ſhut, and the draw-bridge raiſed. Upon this, John Biſſet, having conſidered a ſhort time, ſaid to thoſe with him; 'Come quickly: let us break down the ſupports of the bridge, ſo that none can ſally out, nor get away without danger from us.'

They ſoon got hatchets and wedges, and the ſupports of the gate next the town were deſtroyed. John Biſſet ſent off a meſſenger to the lord Percy at Alnwick, which is but twelve ſhort leagues off, to requeſt he would come immediately to his aſſiſtance with all his forces, for that Berwick caſtle had been taken by the Scots. He alſo ſaid to Thomelin Friant*, who was the perſon he ſent; 'Tell my lord of Percy the ſtate you have left me in, and how the Scots are ſhut up in the caſtle, and cannot get away, unleſs they leap the walls; ſo let him haſten here as faſt as he poſſibly can.'

Alexander Ramſay and his men having ſcaled the caſtle of Berwick, thought they had done wonders, as in truth they had: they would have been maſters of the town, if John Biſſet had not acted ſo prudently, and ſlain whomever they pleaſed, or ſhut them up in the tower, for ſuch was their intention: they ſaid, 'Let us now go into the town; it is ours; and ſeize all the riches, which we will make the good men of the town carry away for us, and then we will ſet fire to it, for it cannot now make any reſiſtance: in three or four days time, ſuccours will come from Scotland, ſo that we ſhall ſave all our pillage: and on our departure we will ſet the caſtle on fire, and by theſe means repay our hoſts.' All his companions aſſented, for they were eager for gain. They tightened on their

* Thomelin Friant. Q.

arms,

arms, and each graſped a ſpear, for they had found plenty in the caſtle, and, opening the gate, let down the draw-bridge. When the bridge was let down, the chains which ſupported it broke; for the pillars on which it ſhould have reſted were deſtroyed, and the planks carried into the town.

When John Biſſet, and the inhabitants who were there aſſembled, ſaw them, they began ſhouting out, 'Oh what, are you there? keep where you are, for you ſhall not go away for a certainty without our permiſſion.'

Alexander Ramſay, ſeeing their appearance, ſoon found they intended to keep them confined in the caſtle, and that they muſt get away as well as they could: he therefore ſhut the gates, to avoid their arrows, and ordered his people to incloſe themſelves within, intending to defend the caſtle. They flung all the dead into the ditches, and ſhut up the priſoners in a tower. They thought the place was full ſtrong enough to hold out until ſuccours ſhould come from Scotland, for the barons and knights were aſſembling in the Merſe and in that neighbourhood: the earl of Douglas had even left Dalkeith, and arrived at Dunbar.

We will now return to the ſquire whom John Biſſet ſent to Alnwick, and ſpeak of his arrival, and of the information he gave to the earl of Northumberland.

CHAP. LXX.

THE EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND RETAKES THE CASTLE OE BERWICK.

THOMELIN Friant made haſte until he arrived at Alnwick, and entered the caſtle from the knowledge he had of it; for it was ſo early that the earl of Northumberland was not out of bed. Having arrived at his bedſide to ſpeak to him, for the buſineſs was very preſſing, he ſaid; 'My lord, the Scots have this morning taken Berwick caſtle by ſurpriſe; and the governor of the town ſends me to inform you of it, as you are the lieutenant of all theſe countries.'

When the earl heard this news, he made every poſſible haſte to order ſuccour to Berwick: he ſent off letters and meſſengers to all knights and ſquires of Northumberland, and to thoſe from whom he expected any aſſiſtance, deſiring them to repair to Berwick without delay, and informing them that he was marching thither to beſiege the Scots, who had conquered the caſtle.

This ſummons was ſoon ſpread over the country, and every man at arms, knight, ſquire and croſs-bowman left their houſes. The lord Neville, the lord Lucy, the lord Gaſtop*, the lord Stafford, the lord de Blelles†, the governor of

---

* Gaſtop. Q.

† Blelles. Q. Bellaſis.

New-

Newcaſtle, and a right valiant and expert man at arms, called ſir Thomas Muſgrave, were there; but the earl of Northumberland firſt arrived at Berwick with his people; and forces daily came thither from all parts.

They were in the whole about ten thouſand men, who ſurrounded the caſtle ſo cloſely on all ſides that a bird could not have eſcaped from it without being ſeen. The Engliſh began to form mines, the ſooner to accompliſh their purpoſe againſt the Scots and regain the caſtle.

Intelligence was brought to the barons and knights of Scotland, that the earl of Northumberland, with the chivalry of that country, were beſieging their countrymen in Berwick caſtle: they therefore determined to march thither, raiſe the ſiege and reinforce the caſtle, for they conſidered what Alexander Ramſay had performed as a moſt gallant achievement. Sir Archibald Douglas, the conſtable, ſaid; 'Alexander is my couſin,' and it is his high birth that has cauſed him to undertake and execute ſo bold a feat as the taking of Berwick caſtle: it behoves us to do all in our power to aſſiſt him in this buſineſs, and if we can raiſe the ſiege it will be to us of great value: I am of opinion, therefore, that we march thither.' He immediately ordered part of the army to remain behind, and the reſt to advance toward Berwick.

He choſe five hundred lances from the flower of the Scots army, and ſet off well mounted and in good order, taking the road to Berwick.

The Engliſh who were before Berwick with ten thouſand men, including archers, ſoon heard how the Scots intended to raiſe the ſiege and reinforce the garriſon: they called a council, and reſolved to extend their ground, to wait for them and offer battle, as they were anxious to meet them.

The earl of Northumberland ordered all to prepare themſelves, and march into the plain to be muſtered, when they were found to amount to full three thouſand men at arms and ſeven thouſand archers.

When the earl ſaw his army ſo numerous, he ſaid; 'Let us keep to this ground, for we are able to combat all the force Scotland can ſend againſt us.' They encamped on an extenſive heath, without the walls of Berwick, in two battalions and in good array.

This had been ſcarcely done an hour before they percived ſome of the ſcouts of the Scots army advancing, but too well mounted to be attacked by the Engliſh: however, ſome Engliſh knights and ſquires would have been glad to have quitted their line to have checked their career, but the earl ſaid, 'Let them alone, and allow their main body to come up: if they have any inclination for the combat, they will themſelves advance nearer to us.'

The Engliſh remained very quiet, ſo that the Scots ſcouts came ſo cloſe they were able to reconnoitre their two battalions and judge of how many men they were compoſed. When they had ſufficiently obſerved them, they returned to their lords, and related what they had ſeen, ſaying; 'My lords,

lords, we have advanced ſo near to the Engliſh that we have fully reconnoitred them: we can tell you, they are waiting for you, drawn up in two handſome battalions, on the plain before the town: each battalion may conſiſt of five thouſand men: you will therefore conſider this well. We approached them ſo cloſe that they knew us for Scots ſcouts; but they made not the ſmalleſt attempt to break their line to purſue us.'

When ſir Archibald Douglas and the Scots knights heard this account, they were quite melancholy, and ſaid; 'We cannot think it will be any way profitable for us to advance further to meet the Engliſh; for they are ten to one, and all tried men: we may loſe more than we can gain: and a fooliſh enterprize is never good, and ſuch is what Alexander Ramſay has performed.'

Sir William Lindſay, a valiant knight and uncle to Alexander Ramſay, took great pains to perſuade them to ſuccour his nephew, ſaying; 'Gentlemen, my nephew, in confidence of your aſſiſtance, has performed this gallant deed, and taken Berwick caſtle. It will turn to your great ſhame, if he ſhould be loſt, and none of our family in future will thus boldly adventure themſelves.'

Thoſe preſent anſwered, 'That they could not amend it, and that the many gallant men who were there could not be expected to riſk their own deſtruction in the attempt to prevent a ſingle ſquire from being made priſoner.' It was therefore determined to retreat further up in their own country

among the mountains near the river Tweed, whither they marched in good order and at their leiſure.

When the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, and the other barons of England, found the Scots were not advancing, they ſent off ſcouts to enquire what was become of them, who brought back intelligence that they had retreated towards the Merſe beyond the caſtle of Roxburgh*.

On hearing this, each man retired quietly to his quarters, where they kept a ſtrict guard until the morrow morning about ſix o'clock, when they all made themſelves ready for the attack of the caſtle. The aſſault immediately began: it was very ſevere, and continued until the afternoon. Never did ſo few men as the Scots defend themſelves ſo well, nor was ever caſtle more briſkly attacked; for there were ladders raiſed againſt different parts of the walls, in which men at arms aſcended with targets over their heads, and fought hand to hand with the Scots. In conſequence, many were ſtruck down and hurled into the ditches. What moſt annoyed the Scots were the Engliſh archers, who ſhot ſo briſkly that ſcarcely any one dared to appear on the bulwarks. This aſſault was continued until the Engliſh entered the caſtle, when they began to ſlay all they could lay hands on: none eſcaped death except Alexander Ramſay, who was made priſoner by the earl of Northumberland.

* There ſeems ſome miſtake of geography here.

In

In this manner was Berwick caſtle regained. The earl of Northumberland appointed John Biſſet conſtable thereof, a very valiant ſquire, through whoſe means, as you have already heard, it had been reconquered. He had every part of it repaired, and the bridge which he had broken down reſtored.

CHAP. LXXI.

THE EARLS OF NORTHUMBERLAND AND NOTTINGHAM ENTER SCOTLAND WITH A LARGE ARMY.

AFTER the re-capture of Berwick caſtle, the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, the two moſt powerful barons of the army, determined to make an excurſion after their enemies, and if they could find them to offer them battle. As they had reſolved, ſo did they execute: early on a morning they marched away taking the road to Roxburgh up Tweedſide. When they had marched about three leagues, they called a council, and the two earls thought it adviſeable to ſend a detachment to Melroſe, a large monaſtery of black monks, ſituated on the Tweed, which is the boundary of the two kingdoms, to know if any Scots were lying thereabouts in ambuſcade; whilſt they with the main body would march into the Merſe; by which means they would not fail of hearing ſome news of the Scots.

That

That valiant knight ſir Thomas Muſgrave was appointed commander of this detachment: it conſiſted of three hundred men at arms and as many archers. They left the army, which, on the ſeparation, took a different route, one marching to the right and the other to the left. Sir Thomas and his ſon rode on to Melroſe, where they arrived at an early hour, and took up their quarters, to refreſh themſelves and their horſes, as well as to make enquiries after the Scottiſh army.

They ordered two of their ſquires, well mounted, to ride over the country, to endeavour to find out the ſituation of the Scots, and in what order they were. Theſe two ſquires, on leaving their commanders, continued their route until they fell into an ambuſcade of the Scots, commanded by ſir William Lindſay, who had poſted himſelf in hopes of meeting with ſome adventure, and to hear news of Berwick, and alſo what had been the fate of his nephew, Alexander Ramſay, and into whoſe hands he had fallen: this he was very anxious to learn: he had with him about forty lances.

The Engliſh were ſeized immediately on their entering this ambuſh, which gave the knight very great pleaſure. He demanded from them whence they came: but they were afraid of ſpeaking leſt they ſhould betray their maſters: however, they were forced to be explicit, for the knight aſſured them that he would have them beheaded, if they did not truly anſwer all the queſtions he ſhould put to them.

When things became ſo ſerious, and they ſaw

no

no means of eſcaping, they related how the caſtle of Berwick had been regained, and all found within put to death except Alexander Ramſay: they afterwards told how the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham were marching along Tweedſide in ſearch of the Scots, and how ſir Thomas Muſgrave, his ſon, ſir John Seton and ſir Richard Breton, with three hundred ſpears and as many archers, were lodged in the abbey of Melroſe, and that theſe knights had ſent them out to diſcover where the Scots were.

'By my troth,' replied ſir William Lindſay, 'you have found us, and you will now remain with us.' They were then taken aſide, and given up to ſome of their companions, with orders to guard them well under penalty of their lives.

Sir William Lindſay inſtantly ſent off one of his men at arms, ſaying; 'Ride to our main army, and tell them all you have heard, and the ſituation of the Engliſh: I will remain here until morning, to ſee if any thing elſe may happen.'

This man at arms rode on until he came to a large village beyond Morlaine*, which is called Hondebray†, ſituated on the Tweed, among the mountains, were there were large meads and a plentiful country; for which reaſons the Scots had quartered themſelves there. Towards evening,

* Morlaine. 'Lambirlaw.'—*M'Pherſon's Geographical Illuſtrations of Scottiſh Hiſtory.*

† Hondebray. 'It ſeems Hadingtoun; and, if ſo, the river ought to be Tine.'—*M'Pherſon's Geog. Illuſt.*

the

the ſquire arrived; and, as they knew he had brought ſome intelligence, he was conducted to the earls of Douglas, Murray, Sutherland, and to ſir Archibald Douglas, to whom he related all you have juſt read.

The Scots were much vexed on hearing the recapture of Berwick caſtle, but they were reconciled by the news of ſir Thomas Muſgrave and the other Engliſh knights being quartered at Melroſe. They determined to march inſtantly, to diſlodge their enemies, and make up from them for the loſs of Berwick.

They armed themſelves, ſaddled their horſes, and left Hadingtoun, advancing to the right of Melroſe, for they were well acquainted with the country, and arrived a little before midnight. But it then began to rain very heavily, and with ſuch a violent wind in their faces that there was none ſo ſtout but was overpowered by the ſtorm, ſo that they could ſcarcely guide their horſes: the pages ſuffered ſo much from the cold, and their comfortleſs ſituation, that they could not carry the ſpears, but let them fall to the ground: they alſo ſeparated from their companions, and loſt their way.

The advanced guard had halted, by orders of the conſtable, at the entrance of a large wood, through which it was neceſſary for them to paſs; for ſome knights and ſquires who had been long uſed to arms ſaid, they were advancing fooliſhly, and that it was not proper to continue their courſe in ſuch weather, and at ſo late an hour, as they ran a riſk of loſing more than they could gain.

They

They therefore concealed themſelves and their horſes under oaks and other large trees until it was day. It was a long time before they could make any fire from their flints and wet wood: however, they did ſucceed, and ſeveral large fires were made; for the cold and rain laſted until ſun-riſe, but it continued to drizzle until the hour of ſix. Between ſix and nine o'clock, the day began to get ſomewhat warmer, the ſun to ſhine, and the larks to ſing. The leaders then aſſembled to conſider what was beſt to be done, for they had failed in their intentions of arriving at Melroſe during the night.

They reſolved to breakfaſt in the open fields on what they had, to refreſh themſelves and horſes, and ſend out parties to forage. This was executed, and the greater part of their foragers ſpread themſelves over the country and adjacent villages. They brought hay and corn for the horſes, and proviſion for their maſters.

It happened that the Engliſh quartered in the abbey of Melroſe had that morning ſent out their foragers, ſo that the two parties met, and the Engliſh had not the advantage: ſeveral of their party were ſlain and wounded, and their forage ſeized. When ſir Thomas Muſgrave and the Engliſh knights in Melroſe heard of it, they knew the Scots were not far diſtant: they ordered their trumpets to ſound, and their horſes to be ſaddled, whilſt they armed themſelves, for they were determined to take the field. They left the abbey in good order, and in handſome array.

The

The Scots knights had received information from their foragers of their enemies being near: they therefore made all haſte to refreſh their horſes, to arm and draw themſelves up in order of battle, alongſide and under cover of the wood. They were full ſeven hundred lances, and two thouſaud others, whom I call luſty varlets, armed with hunting ſpears, durks and pointed ſtaves.

The lord Archibald Douglas and his couſin the earl of Douglas ſaid; 'We cannot fail to have ſome buſineſs ſince the Engliſh are abroad: let us therefore be on our guard, for we will fight with them if the parties be nearly equal.' They ſent two of their men at arms to obſerve the order of the Engliſh, whilſt they remained ſnug in their ambuſh.

CHAP. LXXII.

SIR THOMAS MUSGRAVE AND THE ENGLISH UNDER HIS COMMAND ARE DEFEATED BY THE SCOTS.

SIR Thomas Muſgrave and the knights of Northumberland, being deſirous of meeting the Scots on equal terms, ſet out from Melroſe, and took the road to Morlane: they left the Tweed on

on their left hand, and, by an aſcending road, made for a mountain called St. Giles*.

Two Scots ſcouts were poſted there, who, having well conſidered the Engliſh, immediately ſet off to their own troops, and related their obſervations on the Engliſh; in what order they were marching, and that they had only ſeen three banners and ten pennons.

The Scots were highly pleaſed with this intelligence, and ſaid with a hearty good will; 'In the name of God and St. Giles, let us march towards them, for they muſt be our priſoners.' They then ſhouted their war-cry, which I think was, 'Douglas, St. Giles!'

They had not advanced half a league before both armies came in ſight, and each knew a combat was unavoidable. Upon this the earl of Douglas knighted his ſon, and ſir James Douglas diſplayed his banner. He alſo knighted the lord Robert and lord David, ſons of the king of Scotland, who in like manner diſplayed their banners. There were made on the ſpot about thirty knights in the Scottiſh army, and one from Sweden, called ſir George de Beſmede, who bore on a ſhield argent a mill-iron gules with an indented bordure gules.

On the other hand, ſir Thomas Muſgrave made his ſon Thomas a knight with others of his houſehold. The lord Stafford and lord Gaſcoyn made ſome likewiſe. They drew out their archers,

* St. Giles. Q. this mountain.

poſting

poſting them on their wings; and, this day, the Engliſh cry was, 'Our Lady of Arleſtone!'

The engagement then commenced with vigour, and the archers by their ſhooting confounded the men at arms; but the Scots were in ſuch numbers, the archers could not be every where. There were between the knights and ſquires many a tilt and gallant deed performed, by which ſeveral were unhorſed.

Sir Archibald Douglas was a good knight, and much feared by his enemies: when near to the Engliſh, he diſmounted, and wielded before him an immenſe ſword, whoſe blade was two ells long, which ſcarcely another could have lifted from the ground, but he found no difficulty in handling it, and gave ſuch terrible ſtrokes, that all on whom they fell, were ſtruck to the ground; and there were none ſo hardy among the Engliſh able to withſtand his blows.

The battle was ſharp and well fought as long as it laſted; but that was not any length of time, for the Scots were three to one, and men of tried valour. I do not ſay but the Engliſh defended themſelves valiantly: in the end, however, they were defeated, and ſir Thomas Muſgrave, his ſon, with ſeveral other knights and ſquires, made priſoners. The Scots took ſeven ſcore good priſoners; and the purſuit laſted as far as the river Tweed, where numbers were ſlain.

The Scots, after this victory, reſolved to march ſtraight for Edinburgh, as they learnt from their priſoners that the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham

Nottingham were in the neighbourhood on the other ſide of the Tweed, on their road to Roxburgh, and that they were in ſufficient numbers to engage with all the force the Scots could bring againſt them: on which account, they thought they might as well abandon their expedition, in order to ſave themſelves and guard their priſoners.

They had wiſely determined to retreat without making any halt; for, had they returned that evening to their former quarters, they would have run a riſk of being conquered, as I ſhall now relate.

When the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, and the other barons of England had ſeparated from ſir Thomas Muſgrave, they advanced directly towards Roxburgh. They learnt from their ſpies, that the Scots, whom they were ſeeking to fight with, were quartered at Hondebray, which pleaſed them much, and they reſolved to have a ſkirmiſh with them: they were marching thither that ſame night the enemy had left it: but it rained ſo hard that they could not accompliſh their purpoſe: they therefore took up their quarters in the woods until the morrow, when they again ſent out their ſcouts to find where the Scots were, who returned, ſaying that they could not ſee any thing of them.

They then determined to advance towards Melroſe, in order to gain intelligence of ſir Thomas Muſgrave and his companions. When they had dined, they marched along Tweedſide, on their way thither, and ſent ſcouts over the river to learn ſome news of them.

After the defeat on the plains of St. Giles, which I have juſt related, the ſcouts met ſeveral of their fellow-ſoldiers flying like men diſcomfited, who told them as much as they knew of the battle. Upon this, they returned, and with them the runaways, who related truly what had paſſed between the Engliſh and Scots: they well knew they had been defeated, but were ignorant who had been killed or who made priſoner.

The lords of Northumberland, on hearing this unfortunate intelligence, were very melancholy, and with reaſon. They had two cauſes for vexation; for having loſt the battle, and for having miſſed finding the Scots, whom they had been in ſearch of.

A numerous council was aſſembled in the field, whether or not to purſue the Scots: but as they did not know which way they had marched, and night approaching, they reſolved to make for Melroſe, and fix their quarters there.

Before they could accompliſh their march to Melroſe, they heard the truth of the event of the battle; that ſir Thomas Muſgrave, his ſon, with ſeven ſcore men at arms, had been made priſoners by the Scots, who were carrying them off, and had taken the road to Edinburgh.

Theſe barons then found that they muſt ſubmit to their loſs, for help it they could not. They paſſed the night as well as they were able, and on the morrow they decamped, when the earl of Northumberland gave permiſſion for every one to return to his home: he himſelf retired into his own country. Thus was this expedition put an end to.

The

The Scots returned to Edinburgh, but not all, for the earl of Douglas and his ſon took the road to Dalkeith. This great ſucceſs which they had obtained was a great novelty for Scotland. The knights and ſquires treated their priſoners handſomely, ranſomed them courteouſly, and did with them the beſt they could. We will now leave off ſpeaking of the Scots, and relate other events which happened in France.

CHAP. LXXIII.

THE DEATHS OF THE QUEENS OF FRANCE AND OF NAVARRE; AND THE RENEWAL OF THE FEUDS BETWEEN THEIR TWO HUSBANDS.

THIS year, in the month of February, the queen of France died, and, as the phyſicians ſaid, by her own fault. She was with child of the lady Catherine, who was afterwards ducheſs of Berry. The queen, as I have before ſaid, was not very far advanced in her pregnancy; but the doctors had forbidden her bathing, as being full of danger: however, ſhe would perſiſt, and continued uſing baths, which brought on a mortal diſorder. King Charles of France never married again.

Soon after the death of the queen of France, the queen of Navarre died alſo. She was ſiſter-

german to the king of France. Upon her death diſputes aroſe among the lawyers of the county of Evreux in Normandy: they ſaid, that that county was, by rightful ſucceſſion from the mother, devolved to the children of the king of Navarre, who were ſeparated from him, under age, and in the guardianſhip of king Charles their uncle.

King Charles of Navarre was ſo much ſuſpected of having cauſed, in former times, many ills to France, that he was not thought worthy of poſſeſſing any inheritance in that kingdom under the name of his children. The conſtable of France, therefore, returned from Aquitaine, where he had been a conſiderable time with the duke of Anjou, and brought with him the lord of Mucident, that he might ſee the king and become acquainted with him.

The conſtable was received by the king with great joy, as was the lord de Mucident on his account.

There were many ſecret councils and converſations between the king and conſtable, which were not immediately made public, reſpecting the ſituation of France and Navarre. We will ſhortly return to this buſineſs; but, in order to chronicle juſtly all the events which at this period happened in the world, I will relate to you the beginning of that grand ſchiſm which deſolated the church, by which all Chriſtendom was ſhaken, and from which many evils were engendered and ſpread abroad.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXIV

THE DEATH OF POPE GREGORY XI.—AFTER THE SUDDEN DEATH OF HIS IMMEDIATE SUCCESSOR, THE CARDINALS ARE CONSTRAINED TO ELECT URBAN VI. WHICH CAUSES A SCHISM IN THE CHURCH OF ROME.

YOU have before heard how pope Gregory XI. filled the papal chair at Avignon. When he found there was not any likelihood of his bringing about a peace between the kings of France and England, he was much diſpleaſed, for he had laboured hard at it, as well as the cardinals by his orders. He reſolved, as a matter of devotion, to reviſit Rome and the holy ſee, which St. Peter and S. Paul had edified and augmented; for he had made a vow to God, that if he ſhould ever be raiſed to ſo eminent an honour as the papacy, he would never hold his ſeat but where St. Peter had placed it.

This pope was of a delicate conſtitution and ſickly habit, ſo that he ſuffered more than another; and during his reſidence at Avignon he was much engaged with the affairs of France, and ſo much preſſed by the king and his brothers, that he had not time to attend to his own concerns: he therefore ſaid, he would place himſelf at a diſtance, that he might enjoy more repoſe.

He made preparations in the moſt ample manner becoming ſuch a great preſonage, on the riviera of Genoa and on all the roads. He told his brethren the cardinals to provide for themſelves; for, being reſolved to go to Rome, he ſhould certainly ſet out. On hearing this, the cardinals were much ſurpriſed and vexed; for they remembered the Romans, and would willingly have turned him from taking this journey, but they could not ſucceed.

When the king of France was informed of it, he was in a violent paſſion; for when at Avignon he had him more under his power than any where elſe. He wrote, therefore, directly to his brother the duke of Anjou, at Toulouſe, ſignifying, that on the receipt of the letter, he ſhould ſet out for Avignon, and endeavour, by talking to the pope, to make him gave up his intended journey.

The duke of Anjou did what the king had ordered, and went to Avignon, where he was received with great reſpect by the cardinals. He took up his lodgings in the palace of the pope, that he might have more frequent opportunities of converſing with him.

You may eaſily imagine that he acquitted himſelfably in the different converſations he had with the pope, to diſſuade him from his intentions of going to Rome; but he would not liſten to him on this ſubject, nor give up any thing that related to the affairs beyond the Alps: he ordered, however, four cardinals to remain at Avignon, to whom he gave full powers for them to act in all

reſpects

reſpects, excepting ſome papal caſes, which he had not the power to delegate out of his own hands.

When the duke found that neither reaſon nor entreaties could prevail with his holineſs to remain where he was, he took leave of him, and ſaid at his departure; 'Holy father, you are going into a country, and among people by whom you are but little loved. You leave the fountain of faith, and a kingdom wherein the church has more piety and excellence than in all the reſt of the world. By this action of yours, the church may fall into great tribulation; for ſhould you die in that country, (which is but too probable, as your phyſicians declare) theſe Romans, who are a ſtrange people and traitors, will be lords and maſters of all the cardinals, whom they will force to elect a pope according to their wiſhes.'

Notwithſtanding theſe ſpeeches and reaſons, he would not put off his journey, but ſet out and arrived at Marſeilles, where the galleys of Genoa had been ordered to wait for him. The duke of Anjou returned to Toulouſe*.

Pope Gregory embarked at Marſeilles with a numerous attendance, and a favourable wind landed him at Genoa. After having re-victualled his galleys, he again embarked, and, making ſail for Rome, diſembarked not far from it.

---

* Denys Sauvage ſays in a note, that it was after this return to Toulouſe, he undertook the expedition mentioned in the lxiiid chapter of this volume.

You muſt know, that the Romans were exceedingly rejoiced at his arrival: the conſuls and all the principal nobility of Rome went out to meet him on horſeback with great pomp, and conducted him with triumph into that city. He took up his reſidence in the vatican, and often viſited a church within Rome which he was much attached to, and to which he had made many conſiderable additions: it was called Santa Maria Maggiore. He died ſoon after his arrival in this ſame church, in which he was buried, and there lies. His obſequies were performed in a magnificent manner, as was becoming ſo eminent a perſonage.

The cardinals, ſhortly after the death of pope Gregory, aſſembled in conclave at the vatican. As ſoon as they had met to elect a pope, according to the uſual modes, who might be worthy and of ſervice to the church, the Romans collected in great numbers, in the ſuburbs of St. Peter: they were, including all ſorts, upwards of thirty thouſand, encouraging each other to do miſchief, if things did not go according to their wiſhes. They came frequently before the conclave, and ſaid; 'Liſten to us, my lords cardinals: allow us to elect a pope: you are too long about it. Chuſe a Roman, for we will not have one of any other country: if you ſhall elect another, neither the Roman people nor the conſuls will conſider him as pope, and you will run a riſk of being all put to death.'

The cardinals heard theſe words, and being in the power of the Romans, were not at their eaſe, nor

nor assured of their lives: they therefore appeased their anger as well as they could. The wickedness of the Romans arose to such a height that those who were nearest the conclave broke in, to frighten the cardinals, in order that they might the sooner decide in favour of him whom they wished. The cardinals were much alarmed, fearing they would all be put to death, and fled, some one way, some another.

The Romans, however, would not suffer them to depart, but collected them again together whether they would or not. The cardinals, finding themselves in their power and in great danger, made quickly an end of the business, to appease the people: and, though it was not done through devotion, yet they made a good election of a very devout man, a Roman, whom pope Urban V. had raised to the purple: he was called the Cardinal of St. Peter.

This election pleased the Romans exceedingly, and the good man had all the rights attached to the papacy; but he only lived three days, and I will tell you the reason. The Romans, being desirous of having a pope from their own nation, were so much rejoiced at the election falling as it had done on the cardinal of St. Peter, that they took the good man, who was at least one hundred years of age, and placing him on a white mule, carried him in triumph for such a length of time, through Rome, out of wickedness and in exultation of their victory over the cardinals by having gained a Roman pope, that the fatigue was too much

much for him. On the third day, he took to his bed, and died, and was buried in the church of St. Peter.

The cardinals were much vexed at the death of the pope; for as they ſaw things were taking a wrong turn, they had determined, during the life of this pope, to have diſſembled with the Romans, for two or three years, and to fix the ſeat of the church elſewhere than at Rome, at Naples or Genoa, out of the power of the Romans. This would have been carried into execution, but the pontiff's death deranged every thing. The cardinals aſſembled in conclave in greater danger than before; for the populace collected in large bodies before St. Peter's, ſhewing plainly that they would not ſcruple to deſtroy them unleſs they elected a pope according to their pleaſure. They kept crying out before the conclave, 'Conſider, my lords cardinals; conſider well what you are about, and give us a Roman pope, who will reſide among us; otherwiſe we will make your heads much redder than your hats.'

Such ſpeeches and menaces frightened the cardinals, for they wiſhed rather to die confeſſors than martyrs: to free themſelves from all danger, they began to deliberate on the choice of a pope, but it fell not on one of their brother-cardinals. They elected the archbiſhop of Bari, a very learned man, who had laboured much for the church. With this promotion to the papacy the Romans were ſatisfied.

The cardinal of Geneva put his head out of one

of

of the windows of the conclave, and, calling out aloud to the Roman populace, ſaid, 'Be appeaſed, for you have a Roman pontiff, Bartholomew Prignano archbiſhop of Bari.'

The people unanimouſly anſwered, 'We are ſatisfied.'

The archbiſhop was not at this moment at Rome, but, as I believe, at Naples. He was immediately ſent for, and, being much pleaſed at the event, came directly to Rome to ſhew himſelf to the cardinals.

On his arrival, great feaſts were made: he was elevated, and had all the powers of the papacy. He took the name of Urban VI. This name was very gratifying to the Romans, on accoun of Urban V. who had much loved them.

His elevation was publiſhed in all the churches in Chriſtendom, and made known to the different potentates, emperors, kings, dukes and earls. The cardinals wrote alſo to their friends, to inform them that they had choſen a pope by a good and fair election, of which ſeveral repented afterwards.

This pope renewed all the graces and pardons which his predeceſſor had given, ſo that divers left their own countries and repaired to Rome to receive them.

We will now for a while leave this matter, and return to the principal object of our hiſtory, the affairs of France.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXV.

THE KING OF NAVARRE SENDS AMBASSADORS TO FRANCE, IN HOPES OF REGAINING POSSESSION OF HIS CHILDREN.—TWO OF HIS PEOPLE ARE CONVICTED OF HAVING ATTEMPTED TO POISON THE KING OF FRANCE.

YOU have before heard, that after the death of the queen of Navarre, ſiſter to the king of France, there were many perſons who, from love to one and hatred to the other, had declared that the inheritance of the children of the king of Navarre, which had fallen to them on their mother's deceaſe, was legally their due; and that the king of France, their uncle by the mother's ſide, had a right to the guardianſhip of them, and the management, in their name, of all the lands which the king of Navarre held in Normandy, until his nephews ſhould be of age*.

The king of Navarre was ſuſpicious of ſomething being propoſed like to the above, for he was well acquainted with the laws and cuſtoms of France. He therefore determined to ſend the biſhop of Pampeluna and ſir Martin de le

* Denys Sauvage ſays, in a marginal note, that he does not underſtand this; for the kings of Navarre, from father to ſon, were the legal inheritors of the county of Evreux; nor how the children could claim any right from their mother.

Carra

Carra into France, to entreat the king in the moſt amicable manner, that out of love to him, he would ſend him his two ſons, Charles and Peter; and that, if it were not agreeable to the king to allow of both coming to him, he at leaſt would let him have Charles, for a treaty of marriage was in contemplation between him and the daughter of king Henry of Caſtille. He reſolved, notwithſtanding this embaſſy to France, to order his caſtles in Normandy to be ſecretly inſpected and reinforced, that the French might not ſeize them; for, if they were not ſtrengthened in every reſpect, they might do ſo; and, ſhould they once get poſſeſſion, he could not regain them when he pleaſed.

He made choice, for this buſineſs, of two valiant men at arms of Navarre, in whom he had great confidence, whoſe names were Peter de Baſille and Ferrando.

The biſhop of Pampeluna and ſir Martin de la Carra arrived in France, and had long conferences with the king, to whom, with much reverence, they recommended the king of Navarre, and entreated of him that he would ſuffer his two ſons to depart. The king replied, that he would conſider of it.

They afterwards received an anſwer in the king's name, his majeſty being preſent, that 'the king wiſhed to have his nephews, the children of Navarre, near him: that they could not be any where better placed: and that the king of Navarre ought to prefer their being with their uncle, the

king

king of France, to any other perſon: that he would not allow either of them to leave him, but would keep them near his perſon, and form them a magnificent eſtabliſhment, ſuitable to their rank as ſons of a king, and his own nephews.' This was all they could obtain.

During the time theſe ambaſſadors were in France, Peter de Baſille and Ferrando arrived at Cherbourg with many ſtores. Theſe two viſited, by orders of the king of Navarre, the whole county of Evreux, renewed the officers, and placed others in the different forts, according to their pleaſure.

The biſhop of Pampeluna and ſir Martin de la Carra returned to Navarre, and related to the king, whom they met at Tudelle*, all that had paſſed in France. The king was not well pleaſed that he could not have his children, and conceived a violent hatred againſt the king of France, which he would have ſhewn if he had had the power; but he was incapable of hurting that kingdom, and beſides he had not formed any alliances. He thought it, therefore, better to diſſemble, until he ſhould have greater cauſe of complaint, and more real evils be done unto him.

The king of France and his council received information that the king of Navarre was reinforcing all the caſtles and towns in Normandy, which he called his own; and they knew not what to think of his conduct.

At this time there was a ſecret armament formed

* Tudelle,—a village in Armagnac, dioceſe of Auch.

in

in England, of two thouſand men at arms, who were embarked, but without any horſes, of which the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge were the commanders.

The Normans, hearing of it, had informed the king of France that this expedition was certainly intended for the coaſts of Normandy, but they could not ſay whither it had ſailed. Others ſuppoſed it to have been undertaken by the advice of the king of Navarre, who meant to deliver up to the Engliſh his ſtrong places in Normandy.

The king of France was alſo told, that he muſt haſten his preparations, if he wiſhed to be maſter of theſe caſtles, and that it had been too long delayed; for, if the Engliſh ſhould once gain them, they would be enabled to haraſs France very much, and they could not obtain a more convenient entrance into the kingdom than by being poſſeſſors of the towns and caſtles of the king of Navarre.

Two ſecretaries of the king of Navarre were arreſted in France, a lawyer and a ſquire: the name of the firſt was Peter du Tertre, and the other James de Rue: they were conducted to Paris for examination, and were found ſo intimately connected with the king of Navarre's intentions of poiſoning the king of France that they were condemned to death, and were executed and quartered at Paris accordingly.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXVI.

THE KING OF FRANCE ORDERS THE POSSESSIONS OF THE KING OF NAVARRE TO BE SEIZED, AS WELL IN NORMANDY AS IN LANGUEDOC.—THE KING OF NAVARRE FORMS AN ALLIANCE WITH THE ENGLISH.—THE TERMS OF THAT ALLIANCE.

THESE machinations and wicked attempts of the king of Navarre were ſo numerous that the king of France ſwore he would not undertake any thing before he had driven him out of Normandy, and had gained poſſeſſion, for his nephews, of every town and caſtle which the king of Navarre held there.

Every day brought freſh information, and worſe news reſpecting the king of Navarre, to the palace of king Charles. It was currently reported that the duke of Lancaſter was to give his daughter Catharine to the king of Navarre, who, in return, was to deliver up to him the whole county of Evreux.

Theſe reports were readily believed in France, for the king of Navarre had but few friends there. The king of France, at this period, went to reſide at Rouen, where he had ſummoned a large body of men arms, and had given the command of it to the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, who advanced to Bayeux, a city in Normandy attached to

Navarre.

Navarre. Theſe barons had with them the lord Charles and lord Peter, the two ſons of the king of Navarre, to ſhew to the whole country and to the county of Evreux, that the war they were carrying on was in behalf of theſe children, and for the inheritance which belonged to them in right of their mother, and which the king of Navarre wrongfully withheld.

However, the greater part of the men at arms, were ſo much attached to the king of Navarre, that they would not quit his ſervice: the Navarrois who were collected in Bayeux, as well as thoſe whom he had ſent thither, maintained the war for him handſomely.

The king of France ordered commiſſioners to Montpellier, to ſeize all the lands and lordſhips which were in the poſſeſſion of the king of Navarre.

When theſe commiſſioners, ſir William des Dormans and ſir John le Mercier, were arrived at Montpellier, they ſent for the principal inhabitants, to whom they ſhewed their inſtructions.

Thoſe of Montpellier obeyed. Indeed it was neceſſary for them to do ſo; for had they acted otherwiſe they would have ſuffered for it, as the duke of Anjou and the conſtable of France had entered their territories with a conſiderable force, who wiſhed for nothing better than to carry the war thither.

Two knights of Normandy, governors of Montpellier for the king of Navarre, were made priſoners by orders of the king of France, as were

alſo ſir Guy de Graville and ſir Liger d'Argeſi, who remained a long time in confinement. Thus was the town of Montpellier and all the barony ſeized by the French.

We will now return to the army of Normandy, and relate how the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere went on. They advanced to Bayeux, and laid ſiege to it. The garriſon-towns of Navarre had cloſed their gates againſt the French, and ſhewed no intentions of ſpeedily ſurrendering them.

When the king of Navarre heard that the French had ſeized the town and territory of Montpellier, and that a large army was in the county of Evreux, where they were pillaging and deſtroying his towns and caſtles, he held many conferences on theſe ſubjects with thoſe in whom he placed the greateſt truſt. It was determined in theſe councils, that as he could not receive any aſſiſtance but from England, he ſhould ſend thither a perſon in whom he confided, with credential letters, to know if the young king Richard and his council were willing to form an alliance with him, and to aſſure them, that from henceforward he would ſwear to be true and loyal to the Engliſh, and would place in their hands all the caſtles which he poſſeſſed in Normandy.

To execute this embaſſy to England, he called to him a lawyer in whom he greatly truſted, and ſaid to him; 'Maſter Paſchal, you will ſet out for England, and manage ſo as to return to me with good news, for from this day forward I will be ſteady in my alliance with the Engliſh.'

Maſter

Maſter Paſchal prepared to do what he had been ordered; and, having made himſelf ready, he embarked, made ſail, and landed in Cornwall, and from thence journeyed on until he arrived at Sheen, near London, where the king reſided. He approached his perſon, and recommended to his majeſty his lord the king of Navarre.

The king entertained him handſomely. There were preſent the earl of Saliſbury and ſir Simon Burley, who entered into the converſation and anſwered for the king, ſaying his majeſty would ſhortly come to London, and ſummon his council on a day fixed on between them.

Maſter Paſchal, at this council, informed the king of all that he had been charged to ſay: he harangued ſo ably and eloquently that he was liſtened to with pleaſure. The council for the king replied, that the offers which the king of Navarre had made were worth attending to; but that, in order to form ſo extenſive an alliance as the king of Navarre was deſirous of making, it would be neceſſary for him to come over himſelf, that he might more fully explain every thing, for the affair ſeemed well deſerving of it.

On this, the council broke up, and maſter Paſchal returned to Navarre, when he related to the king that the young king of England and his council were deſirous of ſeeing him. The king replied, he would go thither, and ordered a veſſel, called a lin*, to be prepared, which ſails with all

* Lin,—a felucca, or ſmall frigate.—Du Cange.

winds, and without danger. He embarked on board this veſſel, with a ſmall attendance: he, however, took with him ſir Martin de la Carra and maſter Paſchal.

The king of France, ſome little time before he ſet out for Rouen, had conceived a great hatred againſt the king of Navarre: he was informed ſecretly, by ſome of his houſehold, of all his negotiations with England: in conſequence, he had managed ſo well with king Henry of Caſtille, that he had ſent the king of Navarre his defiance, and had commenced a ſevere war againſt him.

The king of Navarre had therefore, before his embarkation, left the viſcount de Caſtillon, the lord de Leſtrac, ſir Peter de Vienne and Baſcle, with a large body of men at arms, as well from his own country as from the county of Foix, with orders to defend his kingdom and his forts againſt the Spaniards.

He embarked with a very favourable wind, which landed him in Cornwall; from whence he journeyed until he came to Windſor, where king Richard and his council were. He was received there with great joy; for they thought they might gain much from him in Normandy, more eſpecially the caſtle of Cherbourg, which the Engliſh were very deſirous of poſſeſſing.

The king of Navarre explained to the king of England and his council, in a clear manner, with eloquent language, his wants, and his reaſons for coming, ſo that he was willingly attended to, and received ſuch promiſes of ſuccour that he was well ſatisfied.

ſatisfied. I will inform you what treaties were entered into between the two kings.

The king of Navarre engaged to remain for ever true and loyal to the Engliſh, and never to make any peace with the kings of France or Caſtille without the conſent of the king of England. He engaged to put the caſtle of Cherbourg into the hands of the king of England, who was to guard it for three years at his own coſts and charges, but the lordſhip and ſovereignty of it were to remain in the king of Navarre. If the Engliſh ſhould be able, by force of arms, to gain any of the towns or caſtles which the king of Navarre then had in Normandy, from the French, they were to remain with the Engliſh; the lordſhip, however, reſting in the king of Navarre*.

The Engliſh were much pleaſed with theſe terms, becauſe they gained a good entrance to France through Normandy, which was very convenient for them.

The king of England promiſed to ſend, at this ſeaſon, a thouſand ſpears and two thouſand archers, by the river Gironde from Bourdeaux to Bayonne; and theſe men at arms were to enter Navarre, and make war on the king of Caſtille. They were not to quit the king nor the kingdom

* See Rymer—for the paſſport to the king of Navarre, and the treaty at length, an. reg. Ric. II.

The paſſport for Charles of Navarre is dated a year later than Froiſſart mentions. It is in Rymer dated the 12th Auguſt, from the manor of Clarendon, 1370, to continue to the feaſt of St. John Baptiſt following, for five hundred perſons.

of Navarre ſo long as there ſhould be war between the kings of Navarre and Caſtille. But theſe men at arms and archers, on entering the territories of Navarre, were to be paid and clothed by the king of Navarre as was becoming them, and on the ſame footing as the king of England was accuſtomed to pay his ſoldiers.

Different treaties, alliances and regulations were drawn up, ſigned, ſealed and ſworn to, between the kings of England and Navarre, which were tolerably well obſerved. In this council, the king named ſuch members as were ordered to Normandy, and thoſe who were to go to Navare; becauſe neither the duke of Lancaſter, the earl of Cambridge, nor the duke of Brittany, were preſent at theſe treaties, it was reſolved to ſend copies ſealed to them, in order that they might haſten to invade Normandy.

CHAP. LXXVII.

THE LORDS DE COUCY AND DE LA RIVIERE TAKE SEVERAL PLACES IN THE COUNTY OF EVREUX FROM THE KING OF NAVARRE.

KING Charles of France, being wiſe and ſubtle (as his whole life plainly ſhewed), had received information of the armament in England, but was ignorant whither it was to ſail, to Normandy

mandy or Brittany. On account of theſe doubts, he had kept in the latter country a large body of men at arms, under the command of the lords de Cliſſon, de Laval, the viſcount de Rohan, the lords de Beaumanoir and de Rochefort. They had beſieged Breſt by block-houſes only, to prevent any proviſion from entering.

The governor of Breſt was a valiant Engliſh ſquire called James Clerk.

Now, becauſe the king of France knew of the king of Navarre's voyage to England, in the hopes of forming an alliance with his adverſary the king of England, he ſuſpected that this naval armament would land in Normandy, and ſeize by force thoſe caſtles which belonged to the king of Navarre; he therefore in haſte ſent orders to the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, ſtating to them his ſuſpicions, with orders to conquer, by the ſpeedieſt modes poſſible, all caſtles, more particularly ſuch as were near to the ſea-coaſts, by force or by negotiation. He knew that Cherbourg was not eaſy to be taken, and alſo that it could not be reinforced on the land ſide.

The king of France had likewiſe ordered large bodies of men at arms to Valognes* from the lower parts of Brittany. Sir Oliver du Gueſclin commanded the Bretons; and the lord d'Ivoy and ſir Perceval were the leaders of the Normans.

* Valognes,—a town in Normandy; it lies between Cherbourg and Carentan.

The lords de Coucy and de la Riviere had beſieged the city of Bayeux with a great force, which was daily increaſing from the additions the king of France was ſending to them from all quarters. Bayeux is a handſome and ſtrong city near the ſea, which at that time belonged to the king of Navarre. The citizens (finding themſelves thus beſieged by their neighbours, who told them, that if the town were taken by ſtorm, they would all inevitably be deſtroyed, both men and women, and the town re-peopled with another ſet of inhabitants,) began to be ſeriouſly alarmed. They ſaw no appearance of aſſiſtance coming to them, but, on the contrary, found themſelves in oppoſition to the lord Charles de Navarre, to whom the county of Evreux belonged, in right of ſucceſſion to his late mother. The inhabitants alſo liſtened to the harangues of the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, who, with impreſſive language, ſhewed them the dangers into which they were running: knowing likewiſe that their biſhop was well inclined towards the French, they thought, conſidering all things, it would be much better for them to ſurrender their city from affection, as they were required to do by the above mentioned lords, than to remain in ſuch peril.

The inhabitants of Bayeux demanded a truce for three days; during which time, a treaty was ſo far concluded that the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere entered the city, and took poſſeſſion of it for the king of France, as his acknowledged commiſſaries.

The

The attorney-general was ſent thither on the part of the children of Navarre, who were preſent during all the negotiations.

The two lords renewed all the officers of the city, and, for fear of a rebellion, left a body of good men at arms: they then marched off to lay ſiege to Carentan, a handſome and ſtrong town ſituated on the ſea-ſhore, and in the diſtrict of Caen.

The inhabitants of Carentan were without any governor of note: indeed, they had not had one ſince ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt, who had been their governor for four years, and had died there; ſo that they had not any to look to for advice but themſelves: they knew alſo that the admiral of France, ſir John de Vienne, in conjunction with the Spaniſh admiral, and a large force, were before Cherbourg, but were ignorant of the treaties of the king of Navarre, as well as unacquainted with the reſult of his journey to England.

They were attacked every day in two different manners; by words and arms; for the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere were very anxious to gain this town, and ſucceeded in winning it by capitulation: they put it under the obedience of the king of France, reſerving the rights of the two ſons of the king of Navarre,

Theſe lords of France readily granted very favourable terms, in order to get poſſeſſion of ſuch towns and caſtles as they wanted by the moſt expeditious means. They took poſſeſſion of Carentan, reinforcing it with men at arms: they then departed,

departed, and came before the caſtle of Molineaux*, which in three days capitulated. They advanced to Conches†, and encamped on the banks of the beautiful river Orne, which runs by Caen, and there refreſhed themſelves, until they knew the inclinations of the inhabitants, who ſhortly ſurrendered on terms; for the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere having the heir of Navarre with them gave a good colour to their proceedings.

However, when any town or caſtle ſurrendered itſelf to the king of France, or to his commiſſaries, there was a condition in the treaty, that all thoſe who choſe to depart might go wherever they pleaſed: thoſe who did depart only went to Evreux, of which Ferrando, a Navarrois, was governor.

After the conqueſt of Conches, which was gained, as you have heard, by treaty, they advanced before Paſſy‡, where there was an aſſault; many were killed and wounded on both ſides. That ſame day the caſtle ſurrendered to the king of France: they then marched away. In ſhort, all that the king of Navarre poſſeſſed in Normandy ſurrendered, excepting Evreux and Cherbourg. When they had won different ſmall forts, and placed the whole country under the obedience of the king

* Molineaux,—a village in Normandy, election of Caen.
† Conches,—a market town in Normandy, near Evreux.
‡ Paſſy,— a town in Normandy, four leagues from Evreux.

of

of France, they laid ſiege to Evreux, which was cut off from any communication with Cherbourg.

In Evreux there was, according to cuſtom, the ſtrongeſt garriſon of Navarrois in Normandy; and the inhabitants never perfectly loved any other lord but the king of Navarre. The place was cloſely beſieged. It held out for a long time; for Ferrando the governor, performed in perſon ſeveral gallant deeds of arms.

About this time the king of Navarre, being returned to his own country, expected to have had ſome aſſiſtance from the Engliſh; but it does not appear that he had any ſuccours from them, for the duke of Lancaſter and the earl of Cambridge, before theſe treaties had been entered on, had experienced very contrary winds for their voyage to Normandy, and ſo numerous a levy as had been ordered of four thouſand men at arms and eight thouſand archers, could not immediately be aſſembled at Southampton, where they were to embark. It was St. John Baptiſt's day before they were all collected and had ſailed from England. The earl of Saliſbury and ſir John Arundel were ſtill at Plymouth, who ought to have reinforced Breſt and Hennebon*; but they had wanted wind, ſo that they joined the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge's army.

They landed on the iſle of Wight, where they remained ſome time waiting for intelligence, and to know whether they ſhould ſail for Normandy or

* Hennebon. Denys Sauvage thinks it ſhould be Aubray, or Derval, inſtead of Hennebon.

Brittany:

Brittany: they there learnt that the French fleet was at ſea, on which ſir John Arundel was ordered back to Southampton, with two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers, to defend that place.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU RETAINS LARGE BODIES OF MEN AT ARMS AGAINST THE ENGLISH.—THE SPANIARDS LAY SIEGE TO BAYONNE.

ON account of the information the king of France had received from the Normans, that the Engliſh were in great force at ſea, but doubtful whither it was directed, he had iſſued a ſpecial ſummons throughout his realm for every knight and ſquire, according to his degree, to keep himſelf fully prepared to march to whatever part he ſhould be ordered.

The duke of Anjou had alſo, at this period, retained large bodies of men at arms from all quarters, with the intention of laying ſiege to Bourdeaux. He had with him his brother the duke of Berry, the conſtable of France, and all the flower of knighthood from Gaſcony, Auvergne, Poitou and Limouſin. In order to carry their enterprize, he had raiſed an immenſe army, and had alſo, with the conſent of the king of France, collected

two hundred thouſand francs in Languedoc; but he could not at preſent undertake this ſiege, for the king of France had recalled the duke of Berry, the conſtable and other barons, on whoſe aſſiſtance he had depended, as it was well known the Engliſh were at ſea, but uncertain in what part of the kingdom they would attempt to land.

Notwithſtanding this expedition from Languedoc had failed, the poor people who had been ſo hard preſſed to pay ſuch large ſums were never repaid any part.

The king of Caſtille, about this time, laid ſiege to Bayonne with full twenty thouſand Spaniards and Caſtillians: he began the ſiege in the winter, and continued it through that whole ſeaſon. Many gallant deeds were performed there by ſea and land, for Roderigo le Roux, don Fernando de Caſtille, Ambroſe de Boccanegra and Peter Baſcle, lay at anchor before Bayonne with two hundrd veſſels, and gave ſufficiency of employment to its inhabitants. The governor of the town at the time was a right valiant knight from England, called ſir Matthew Gournay.

His good ſenſe and proweſs were, as I have been informed, of great aſſiſtance to the townſmen. I have heard from ſome of thoſe who were beſieged, that the Spaniards would have ſucceeded in their attempt on Bayonne, had not a great mortality afflicted their army, ſo that out of five who were taken ill three died.

King Henry had with him a necromancer from Toledo, who declared that the whole air was poiſoned

ſoned and corrupted; and that no remedy could be had for it without riſking the death of all. In conſequence of this deciſion, the king broke up the ſiege; but the Spaniards and Bretons had conquered a number of ſmall forts and caſtles in the adjacent country, into which they entered; and the king went to refreſh himſelf at la Coulongne*. He ſent his conſtable, with ten thouſand men, to lay ſiege to Pampeluna.

In that city were the viſcount de Caſtillon, the lord de Leſcut and le Baſcle, with two hundred lances in the whole, who carefully guarded the place. The king of Navarre, who had but lately returned from England, reſided at Tudelle, impatiently expecting the ſuccours which were to come to him from England, and which indeed had been ordered; for, by directions from the king and council, the lord Neville and ſir Thomas de Termes,† were at Plymouth, or in that neighbourhood, with about one thouſand men at arms and two thouſand archers, and were laying in their ſtores for the voyage to Bourdeaux; but they had not met with a paſſage according their wiſhes.

With regard to the great army under the command of the duke of Lancaſter, at laſt it landed near to St. Malo: news of which was ſoon carried to the Breton lords of the French party, and immediately the viſcount de Belliere, ſir Henry de Malatrait and the lord de Combor left their habi-

* La Coulongne, Sala calls it Calongne. Q. if not Orogne.

tations, and flung themſelves into St. Malo with two hundred men at arms, to the great joy of Morfonace the governor, who otherwiſe would have been hardly puſhed.

END OF VOL. IV.

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoster Row.

00037377

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 02 January, 2016